welcome to the book!

What is The Book? It’s the professional skin therapist’s ultimate guide to success with Dermalogica! The format works to give you quick access to products, ingredients, treatments and business strategies as you need them, when you need them most.

In addition to coordinating with the format of Dermalogica Live, The Book now allows for:
• Easier viewing thanks to a new design format.
• A quicker way to find sections.

We hope that in addition to these benefits, you’ll find many more reasons why The Book is now more therapist-friendly than ever before.

Combine the information in this manual with the many classes made available to you by Dermalogica. Developed by The International Dermal Institute, Dermalogica’s training and education tools are the best in the industry.

Put this training guide to work for you: stash The Book on your product trolley and use it daily. Spill stuff on it. Put it through its paces – we want this guide to be an indispensable tool for you.

So, let’s get started!
Before you dive into The Book, take a quick review of how we’ve separated our product section. This format will make it even easier to put The Book to work for you!

You’ll find our product section follows our categorization of Dermalogica. By segmenting the line, you can more effectively target your clients’ needs based upon skin condition in the treatment room. It also helps simplify the prescription of an at-home regimen.

**skin health maintenance**

Our gray line in its signature gray packaging consists of best-selling, award-winning products ideal for maintaining optimal skin health. When specific issues such as skin aging, pigmentation, adult breakouts or sensitivity arise, look to our condition-specific products to effectively target your needs.

**specific concerns**

- The AGE Smart® section begins on page 78. Here you’ll find products to address the three main biochemical triggers that lead to skin aging.

- For hyperpigmentation and uneven skin tone Chromawhite TRx® delivers brighter, more luminous skin without Hydroquinone. Turn to page 100.

- For serious relief of sensitized skin, find the UltraCalming™ system, beginning on page 112.

- To help treat, clear and prevent adult acne, find the MediBac Clearing® section, beginning on page 126.

**targeted needs**

- For sun protection with skin care benefits, find our Daylight Defense products, starting on page 142.

- Body Therapy products follow on page 154.

- For the ultimate in shaving and skin health, look to Shave, beginning on page 172.

**professional-use-only**

- Our professional-use-only products begin on page 54.

When looking for professional-use-only products that target specific concerns, find them in their respective AGE Smart®, ChromaWhite TRx®, UltraCalming™ or MediBac Clearing® sections, after the retail products.
# table of contents

## Business Section

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Building a Successful Business with Dermalogica!</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Retailing and Merchandising for Success</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Tester Unit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Retail Products

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Cleansers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>PreCleanse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Dermal Clay Cleanser</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Special Cleansing Gel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Essential Cleansing Solution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>The Sponge Cloth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Toners</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Multi-Active Toner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Exfoliants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Gentle Cream Exfoliant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Skin Prep Scrub</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Daily Microfoliant®</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Daily Resurfacers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Exfoliating Face Brush</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Moisturizers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Active Moist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Skin Smoothing Cream</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Intensive Moisture Balance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Sheer Tint Moisture SPF15 / Sheer Moisture SPF15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Masques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Skin Hydrating Masque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Skin Refining Masque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Intensive Moisture Masque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Concentrated Boosters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>36</td>
<td>Skin Hydrating Booster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>37</td>
<td>Gentle Soothing Booster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>38</td>
<td>Extra Firming Booster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>39</td>
<td>Skin Renewal Booster</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>Targeted Treatments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41</td>
<td>Climate Control Lip Treatment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>42</td>
<td>Eye Treatments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>43</td>
<td>Soothing Eye Make-Up Remover</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>44</td>
<td>Total Eye Care with SPF15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>45</td>
<td>Intensive Eye Repair</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46</td>
<td>Daily Groomers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>47</td>
<td>Environmental Control Deodorant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>48</td>
<td>Shine Therapy Shampoo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>49</td>
<td>Silk Finish Conditioner</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>Treatment Foundation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51</td>
<td>Treatment Foundation</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## Professional-use-only Products

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Page</th>
<th>Title</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>54</td>
<td>Professional-use-only Products</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>55</td>
<td>Professional Exfoliation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>57</td>
<td>The Dermalogica Exfoliation Level System</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>58</td>
<td>Calculating BioActivity Scores</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>59</td>
<td>Exfoliant Product Selection and Instructions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>Exfoliant Accelerator 35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>62</td>
<td>Professional Masques</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>63</td>
<td>Colloidal Masque Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64</td>
<td>Plankton Masque Base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>65</td>
<td>Contour Masque</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>66</td>
<td>Professional Extractions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>67</td>
<td>Scaling Fluid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>68</td>
<td>Post Extraction Solution</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Table of Contents

### 69 Professional Massage
- 70 Massage Cream
- 71 Revitalizing Additive
- 72 Clearing Additive
- 73 Soothing Additive
- 74 Botanical Mixers
- 75 Calming Botanical Mixer
- 76 Purifying Botanical Mixer
- 77 Replenishing Botanical Mixer
- 78 AGE Smart®
- 82 Skin Resurfacing Cleanser
- 83 Antioxidant HydraMist
- 84 MultiVitamin Thermafoliant®
- 85 MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque
- 86 MAP-15 Regenerator®
- 87 MultiVitamin Power Concentrate
- 88 Overnight Repair Serum
- 89 Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30
- 90 Super Rich Repair
- 91 Power Rich™
- 92 MultiVitamin Power Firm
- 93 Age Reversal Eye Complex
- 94 Renewal Lip Complex
- 95 MultiVitamin Hand and Nail Treatment
- 96 AGE Smart® Professional
- 97 MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant
- 99 AGE Smart® Complex

### 100 ChromaWhite TRx®
- 103 Tri-Active Cleanse
- 104 Powerfoliant®
- 105 C-12 Concentrate
- 106 Extreme C
- 107 Pure Light SPF30
- 108 Pure Night
- 109 ChromaWhite TRx® Professional
- 110 ChromaWhite TRx® Complex

### 112 UltraCalming™
- 115 UltraCalming™ Cleanser
- 116 UltraCalming™ Mist
- 117 UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate
- 118 UltraSmoothing Eye Serum
- 119 Barrier Repair
- 120 Redness Relief SPF20
- 121 UltraCalming™ Relief Masque

### 122 UltraCalming™ Professional
- 123 UltraCalming™ Complex
- 124 Clinical Colloidal Oatmeal

### 126 MediBac Clearing®
- 129 Clearing Skin Wash
- 130 Skin Purifying Wipes
- 131 Clearing Mattifier
- 132 Oil Control Lotion
- 133 Overnight Clearing Gel
- 134 Special Clearing Booster
- 135 Concealing Spot Treatment
- 136 Sebum Clearing Masque

### 137 MediBac Clearing® Professional
- 138 Skin Exfoliant System
- 139 MediBac Clearing® Masque System

### 140 Oil Free Massage
- 141 MediBac Clearing® Complex

### 142 Daylight Defense
- 143 Oil Free Matte Block SPF20
- 144 Super Sensitive FaceBlock SPF30
- 145 Extra Rich FaceBlock SPF30
- 146 Ultra Sensitive FaceBlock SPF25
- 147 Solar Defense Booster SPF30
- 148 MultiVitamin BodyBlock SPF20
- 149 WaterBlock Solar Spray SPF30
- 150 Solar Defense Wipes SPF15
- 151 Solar Shield SPF15
- 152 After Sun Repair

### 154 Body Therapy
- 155 Exfoliating Body Scrub
- 156 Conditioning Body Wash
- 157 Hydro-Active Mineral Salts
- 158 Body Hydrating Cream
- 159 UltraRich Body Cream
- 160 Stress Relief Treatment Oil
- 161 The Ultimate Buffing Cloth

### 162 Thermal Body Therapy
- 163 Body Microfoliant®
- 164 Power Recovery® Pack
- 165 Thermal Heat Activator
- 166 Enzymatic Sea Mud Pack
- 167 Clean Massage Oil Base
- 168 Energizing Oil – Professional Strength
- 169 Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength
- 170 Thermal Stamp
table of contents

172  Shave
173  Clean Bar
174  Daily Clean Scrub
175  Pre-Shave Guard
176  Soothing Shave Cream
177  Invigorating Shave Gel
178  Close Shave Oil
179  Post-Shave Balm
180  Daily Defense Block SPF15

Professional Services
183  Face Mapping® Skin Analysis
184  Dermalogica Consultation Card
189  Working with the Face Mapping® Skin Analysis Consultation Card and Prescription Sheet
191  Face Mapping® Skin Analysis Zone-By-Zone
193  Body Mapping™
194  Working with the Body Mapping™ Consultation Card and Prescription Sheet
197  Body Mapping™ Zone-By-Zone
199  Skin Bar®
200  Setting Up Skin Bar®

201  Skin Treatments
202  The Dermalogica Double Cleanse Routine
204  The Dermalogica Extraction Technique
205  The Dermalogica Skin Treatment
207  Thermal Body Therapy Treatments
208  Mineral Salt Scrub Therapy
209  Body Foliation Therapy
210  Power Recovery® Therapy
211  Nourishing Sea Mud Therapy
212  Mud Massage Therapy
213  Deep Thermal Therapy with Thermal Stamp
215  Touch Therapies and Thermal Touch Treatments
216  UltraCalming™ Skin Relief Massage
218  Pressure Point Massage
219  Thermal Touch for the Hands and Arms
220  Thermal Touch for the Décolleté, Neck and Chest
221  Thermal Touch for Back Purification
222  Thermal Touch for the Legs and Feet

224  MicroZone® Treatments
225  MicroZone® Flash Exfoliation
226  MicroZone® Blackhead Relief
227  MicroZone® Eye Rescue
228  MicroZone® Rapid Spot Clearing
229  MicroZone® Lip Renewal
230  MicroZone® Hand Repair
231  MicroZone® Men's Skin Fitness (for congested, oily and breakout-prone skin)
232  MicroZone® Men's Skin Fitness (for inflamed, sensitized, irritated skin)
233  MicroZone® Moisture Boost
234  MicroZone® Skin Soothing
235  MicroZone® Age Management
236  MicroZone® Oil Control

Reference
237  Ingredient Analysis
238  Ingredient Analysis A-Z
252  Index
building a successful business with dermalogica!

Dermalogica isn’t just the world’s leading professional product line – it’s a complete system for success. We’re working hard to support you in every way, from boosting your education to marketing to clients to grow your business, and to ensure all Dermalogica accounts are amongst the fastest-growing in the industry! Over the next few pages, you’ll find proven business strategies that will help you grow your business as a Dermalogica account. Whether you’re already very business-savvy or are new to the idea of running a business, Dermalogica is ready to help you with straight-forward plans for creating a successful business that continually grows.

**treatment room set-up**

No matter what your treatment room size or what kind of treatments you deliver, Dermalogica has created the most efficient treatment room set-up that includes everything from your back bar to your appearance! To the right is an outline of how Dermalogica professional products should be set up on your trolley.
retailing and merchandising for success

Merchandising your retail area is critical to the success of your center’s image and retailing success. Presentation is everything, so properly showcasing Dermalogica will make your center stand out. Whether you are a skin treatment center that caters solely to clients interested in healthy skin, or are a full service salon, Dermalogica can help you expand your bottom line through retail and merchandising. Introducing new merchandising elements will be an initial investment for you, but updates are easy and inexpensive as most of the fixtures have been designed to be easily updated. This will create a fresh new look in your center instantly and help increase sales.

Follow these basic merchandising guidelines:

1. Clean your surface before you start.
2. Map and plan out all merchandising moves before you begin.
3. Dermalogica should be merchandised in a focal area within your account.
4. Ensure all Dermalogica products are easy to access and are merchandised in order of use (see schematics). Never lock products in a cabinet or place behind a counter.
5. Products should be well stocked and straight. Use a wooden ruler to straighten and even out products.
6. All Shelf Talkers or Tester Units should be clean, and testers should be full, clean and easily accessible.
7. Best-selling products should be merchandised at eye level.
8. Ensure testers are in front of corresponding products and are clean and full.
9. Use merchandising signs and sign holders whenever possible to enhance displays and to communicate to the consumer.
10. Always use current merchandising collateral pieces to ensure your presentation is up to date.
11. Create a hot spot at your cash wrap or high traffic area to highlight a launch, focal product or promotion. Utilize merchandising pieces shown in this guide to create impact at your point of sale.
12. Always display groupings in 3’s or 5’s; tallest to smallest, creating a pyramid shape. This will provide balance to your displays.
13. Cleaning tips for acrylic merchandising elements, acrylic fixtures and Tester Unit Shelf Talkers: Use Swiffer® dusters, a soft cloth and soap and water. Do not use glass cleaner – it will damage the acrylic!
Don’t waste your top shelf
Use your top shelf to spotlight Dermalogica’s latest product launch, promotion or heroes. Then merchandise the product below on a shelf that sits at eye level and is placed in its respective category. Highlight displays on risers and cubes.

Categorize your products
Keep a distinct space between your Dermalogica Cleansers, Moisturizers, Boosters, etc. (at least the width of a product carton). The separation between products not only provides a place for the eye to land, but also keeps product organized. The Shelf Talker System creates impact on shelf and is easy to navigate. Testers are placed in front of products, aligned to the left, for easy try and buy. Keep Dermalogica products 3-deep on shelves, as this is a nice compromise between looking overstocked and under stocked. Refer to the schematics for assistance when organizing product on your shelves.
Impulse buys
Dermalogica has an unlimited supply of travel-size products, skin kits and regimen kits that can be accommodated in a merchandising unit that fits conveniently at your register or check-out. Or, keep your check-out merchandised with the latest Dermalogica products or promotions, always keeping it neat and clean.

Create impact with displays
Use display sheets, collateral and risers to create impact on shelf. Add dimension by utilizing versatile risers creating a pyramid shape and always display products in odd numbers, i.e., threes, fives or sevens.
Tester Unit
Clients love to experience products before buying them, and one of the best places they can do this is at a tester unit. The tester unit is designed to sit on a counter or on its own pedestal base. The shelves are organized by category or segment – ideal for self navigation – and are easily removable from the tower to be used at Skin Bar® or other consultation area. The individual acrylic plates are easy to update when new products are introduced.

Set up and maintenance
Make sure your Dermalogica tester unit is easily accessible completely stocked with every product and our bright “try me!” stickers, or the correct segment tester sticker. Have tissue on hand or close by.

Customizing your tester unit
The utility shelf can be used for tissue, additional tester products or showcasing a promotion or featured product.

Keep your tester unit clean
Wipe down the product nozzles and keep the environment around the unit tidy. Use a duster or soft cloth; do not use glass cleaner as it will scratch the acrylic.

Turn walk-ins into repeat clients
Your tester unit is a great way to grab new clients. By allowing clients to feel free to sample and play with products, you will increase interest and interaction, as well as a willing next purchase.
Thorough cleansing is the most critical step in both a successful professional treatment and at-home regimen, as it delivers immediate skin care benefits and is an important part of whole-body health. Because cleansing is so important, The International Dermal Institute created the Dermalogica Double Cleanse, the two-part cleansing routine that begins with PreCleanse and finishes with the prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser. As part of the professional and at-home regimen, the Dermalogica Double Cleanse ensures the healthiest, cleanest skin ever. All Dermalogica Cleansers are soap-free and acid-balanced to protect the skin’s natural moisture barrier.
**skin condition**
All skin conditions (especially oily).

**description**
A lightweight Olive and Apricot Kernel-based cleansing oil, fortified with Kukui Nut, Borage Seed and Rice Bran oils, that gently liquefies sebum and oil-based debris from the skin’s surface. The hydrophilic (water-loving) formula enables PreCleanse and oil-based debris to be readily rinsed away without leaving behind any greasy residue. Follow with prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser for a thorough double cleansing.

**top products to prescribe**
- prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser
- Daily Microfoliant®
- Multi-Active Toner

**application**
Remove all eye and lip make-up by dispensing PreCleanse onto damp cotton. Dispense into dry hands. Massage over dry face to dissolve surface oil and dirt. Concentrate on areas of congestion or stubborn debris. Wet hands and continue massaging to create a light, milky emulsion. Rinse with lukewarm water. Follow with prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser for professional cleansing results.

**professional application**
Refer to the professional Dermalogica Double Cleanse routine in the Professional Services section of The Book.

**key ingredients**
- **Olive Oil**: acts as a rich emollient that smooths and softens skin.
- **Prunus Armeniaca (Apricot) Kernel**: an excellent source of fatty acids, Vitamin A and Linoleic Acid. Oil helps soothe irritation, nourish and moisturize.
- **Aleurites Moluccana (Kukui Nut)**: a rich source of vitamins A, C and E plus omega-3 fatty acids that help reinforce the barrier lipids of the Stratum Corneum. Used to treat skin disorders, dry skin, acne and irritation.
- **Borago Officinalis (Borage Seed)**: contains Gamma Linoleic Acid (GLA), a fatty acid that has been widely used for treating inflammation, eczema, dehydration and scaliness.
- **Oryza Sativa (Rice Bran)**: this oil is rich in Oryzanol, B vitamins, Phytic Acid, antioxidants and phytosterols that help inhibit oxidative skin damage, soften skin and facilitate skin repair.
- **Tocopherol Acetate (Vitamin E)**: a rich antioxidant vitamin that improves skin smoothness and softness.
- **Caprylic/Capric Triglyceride**: an emulsifying agent that is activated by the addition of water to release the bonded oils from the skin’s surface.

**benefits / top retailing points**
- Dissolves oil-based make-up, sebum, sunscreens and environmental pollutants from skin’s surface, enabling skin to be thoroughly cleansed.
- Removes oils without compromising skin’s natural barrier lipids or clogging pores.
- Fortified with conditioning essential fatty acids to help smooth, calm and nourish skin.
- Delivers a level of cleansing traditionally experienced in the professional treatment room.
- A great make-up remover: even for waterproof mascara and long-wearing lipstick!

**retail**
5.1 Fl. Oz. / 150 mL

**professional**
16 Fl. Oz. / 473 mL
dermal clay cleanser

Skin condition
Skin with excess oil production.

description
Water-soluble Bentonite and Kaolin clays combine with purifying botanical extracts and refreshing Menthol to remove excess oils and refine skin’s texture.

top products to prescribe
• Active Moist
• Multi-Active Toner
• Skin Refining Masque

application
Following the removal of PreCleanse, apply to dampened face and throat, massaging with damp fingers in light, upward strokes. Concentrate on any areas of congestion and impurities. Rinse with warm water. Follow with Multi-Active Toner and prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer.

optional:
Apply to wet face and throat and leave on for 5 minutes as a “mini” masque. Rinse thoroughly.

professional application
Refer to the professional Dermalogica Skin Treatment in the Professional Services section of The Book.

key ingredients
Bentonite and Kaolin: clays that help absorb excess oil, refine pores and clear congestion.
Sambucus Nigra (Sambucus) Flower, Hedera Helix (Ivy) and Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) Fruit: natural astringents that remove excess oils and refine skin’s texture.
Salvia Officinalis (Sage) Leaf and Cucumis Sativus (Cucumber) Fruit: soothe and calm skin.
Menthol: soothes and helps calm aggravation while imparting a “cool” feeling on skin.

benefits / top retailing points
Skin-perfecting formula provides deep cleansing for oily, congested skin.
Unique clay formula thoroughly removes dead cell debris and absorbs excess oils.
Soothing Menthol helps calm aggravation and has a cooling sensation on skin.
Naturally astringent plant extracts help prevent future breakouts.

The Book
skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
A concentrated, soap-free, foaming gel designed to thoroughly remove impurities without disturbing the skin’s natural moisture balance.

top products to prescribe
• PreCleanse
• Exfoliating Face Brush
• Prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer

application
Following the removal of PreCleanse, lather a pea-sized amount of gel in moistened hands and apply to dampened face and throat. Rinse with warm water. Follow with Multi-Active Toner and prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer.

professional application
Refer to the professional Dermalogica Skin Treatment in the Professional Services section of The Book.

key ingredients
Quillaja Saponaria: a naturally-foaming extract that gently removes impurities and excess oils.

Melissa Officinalis (Balm Mint): a skin-soothing extract that cools and calms.

Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender): a naturally antiseptic extract. Helps soothe and purify skin.

benefits / top retailing points
Soap-free, fragrance-free cleanser washes away impurities without stripping or drying.

Calming agents work to soothe and purify skin.

Gentle foaming lather cleanses away toxins and debris without over-drying, leaving a super-clean surface.

Use with Exfoliating Face Brush for a dual-action exfoliating cleanse.
essential cleansing solution

Skin condition
Dry or prematurely-aging skin.

description
A rich, creamy cleanser that gently lifts impurities from dry skin while deep-conditioning and nourishing.

top products to prescribe
• PreCleanse
• Skin Hydrating Booster
• Intensive Moisture Balance

application
Following the removal of PreCleanse, apply to dampened face and throat, massaging with light, upward strokes. Concentrate on any areas of excessive dryness and impurities. Rinse with warm water. Follow with Multi-Active Toner and prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer.

professional application
Refer to the professional Dermalogica Skin Treatment routine in the Professional Services section of The Book.

key ingredients
Carthamus Tinctorius (Safflower): softens and conditions skin.
Ascorbyl Palmitate (Vitamin C) and Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E): antioxidants that improve skin smoothness and softness, and help control damage caused by free radicals.
Rosmarinus Officinalis (Rosemary) Leaf and Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) Fruit: extracts that refresh tired skin.

benefits / top retailing points
Gentle cream cleanser replenishes dry skin and maintains moisture levels.
Essential vitamins and plant extracts help nourish and condition skin.
Completely water-soluble emulsion rinses off easily.

Retail
1.7 Fl. Oz. / 50 mL
8.4 Fl. Oz. / 250 mL
16.9 Fl. Oz. / 500 mL

Professional
32 Fl. Oz. / 946 mL
the sponge cloth

skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
A super-soft, reusable cleansing cloth gentle enough for even the most sensitized skin. Use with your prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser to thoroughly remove make-up and debris without irritating skin.

top products to prescribe
• Prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser
• Prescribed Dermalogica Masque

application
Rinse to soften before using to gently remove cleansers, exfoliants and masques. Rinse and let air dry.

benefits / top retailing points
Unique, soft texture efficiently removes cleansers and masques.
Made of durable, PVA (Polyvinal Alcohol Foam) material, similar to a natural sea sponge. Lasts from use to use.
Can be machine washed in cold water. Allow to air dry.
Material hardens when dry, but will soften again when thoroughly moistened with warm water.
Rinses clean and dries quickly for convenient use.
Ideal for babies and travel.
Made from biodegradable, bacteria-resistant fabric.

10 inches / 25 cm square
Toning is an essential, yet often overlooked, portion of skin health regimens. Traditionally applied after cleansing, Dermalogica Toners can also be used to refresh and hydrate as needed throughout the day.

Locate additional Dermalogica Toners for specific concerns and conditions in their respective AGE Smart®, UltraCalming™ and MediBac Clearing® sections.
multi-active toner

Skin Condition
All skin conditions.

description
An ultra-light spritz that refreshes and hydrates the skin while smoothing the surface. Helps condition skin to prepare for proper moisture absorption.

top products to prescribe
• Special Cleansing Gel
• Skin Hydrating Booster
• Body Hydrating Cream

Application
After performing the Dermalogica Double Cleanse, spray directly over the entire face and throat with eyes closed. Follow with prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer.

Professional application
1. Spritz onto the face, throat and upper chest evenly in an arc-like motion. Ensure the eyes are closed.
2. Gently press excess product into skin. Skin should remain damp following application, allowing even absorption of prescribed Dermalogica products.

optional:
Multi-Active Toner may be spritzed onto skin to aid with the moistening and removal of Plankton Masque Base, or any other setting masque (i.e., MediBac Clearing® Masque System).

Key ingredients
Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender): a naturally antiseptic extract. Helps soothe and purify skin.

Melissa Officinalis Leaf (Balm Mint) and Aloe Vera: cools, softens and hydrates skin.

 Arnica Montana and Cucumis Sativus (Cucumber) Fruit: extracts that help keep skin smooth and refreshed.

Sodium PCA: a moisture-binding humectant that provides effective moisture absorption and hydration.

Benefits / top retailing points
Helps even out porosity of skin to allow for optimal moisturizer absorption.

Ideal for use during air travel.

Can be spritzed on throughout the day to help maintain hydration levels.

16 Fl. Oz. / 473 mL
1.7 Fl. Oz. / 50 mL
8.4 Fl. Oz. / 250 mL

1.7 Fl. Oz. / 50 mL
8.4 Fl. Oz. / 250 mL
16 Fl. Oz. / 473 mL
From breakout-prone and aging skin to hyperpigmented and dry, dehydrated skin, exfoliation is important to the health of all skin conditions. Dermalogica recommends pairing one day of intense exfoliation with seven days of gentle exfoliation to more effectively stimulate cell renewal rates, helping to reduce the signs of premature aging, improve skin texture, remove excess surface cells that clog follicles and brighten skin. With our selection of chemical and physical exfoliants that range from gentle to more intense, there is a Dermalogica Exfoliant for every skin condition.
gentle cream exfoliant

**skin condition**
All skin conditions, except sensitized.

**description**
A non-abrasive hydroxy acid and enzyme exfoliation treatment that thoroughly removes dulling surface debris, dramatically improving skin texture.

**bioactivity score 12**

**top products to prescribe**
- Prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser
- Solar Defense Booster SPF30
- Exfoliating Body Scrub

**application**
After performing the Dermalogica Double Cleanse, apply a thin layer over cleansed skin, avoiding the lip and nostril area. Use care around the delicate eye area as well. Let activate for 5 to 10 minutes. Rinse well. Use 2 to 3 times weekly or as recommended.

**contraindications for use**
Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been waxed.

**key ingredients**
- **Lactic Acid and Salicylic Acid:** slough off dead skin cells, speeding cell renewal.
- **Sulfur:** clears the skin by eliminating bacteria associated with acne and by clearing excess oil and congestion in the follicle.
- **Papain and Bromelain:** enzymes that digest excess surface cells.
- **Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender), Aloe Vera and Centaurea Cyanus (Cornflower):** extracts that help reduce sensitivity and soothe skin.

**benefits / top retailing points**
- Provides chemical exfoliation with the convenience of a two-in-one masque and exfoliation treatment.
- Helps loosen dead skin cells and clear follicles to promote skin health and prepare skin for optimal absorption of moisturizing ingredients.
- Contains both alpha and beta hydroxy acids to help speed cell turnover and cell renewal rates.
- Provides effective, non-aggressive retexurization while increasing hydration and smoothness.
skin prep scrub

**skin condition**
All skin conditions, especially skin with excess oil production.

**description**
A skin-polishing scrub with natural Corn Cob Meal that leaves skin with a smooth, healthy complexion.

**bioactivity score 1**

**top products to prescribe**
- Prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser
- Active Moist
- Exfoliating Body Scrub

**application**
After performing the Dermalogica Double Cleanse, apply with damp hands to damp face and throat, avoiding the eyes. Rinse thoroughly with warm water. Use 2 to 3 times a week or as recommended.

**professional application**

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Apply with damp hands to damp face and throat, avoiding the eyes. Customize with prescribed Botanical Mixer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Massage evenly over skin by using the fingertips in small circular movements.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Remove all traces with damp sponges soaked in water customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**optional:**
Combine with Essential Cleansing Solution, Special Cleansing Gel or Dermal Clay Cleanser for an exfoliating power cleanse.
Use with Exfoliating Face Brush for a deeper level of exfoliation.

**contraindications for use**
Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

**key ingredients**
- **Corn Cob Meal:** finely granulated to gently remove dulling surface debris.
- **Malva Sylvestris (Mallow), Hedera Helix (Ivy) and Aloe Vera:** extracts that help soothe and help prevent over-stimulation.
- **Arnica Montana and Cucumis Sativus (Cucumber) Fruit:** extracts that help keep skin smooth and refreshed.

**benefits / top retailing points**
- Removes clogging surface debris, allowing for optimal absorption of treatment ingredients.
- Gently polishes skin to create a smooth surface.

---

**retail**
- 2.5 Fl. Oz. / 75 mL

**professional**
- 6 Fl. Oz. / 177 mL
skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
This unique Rice-based enzyme powder with a botanical brightening complex microfoliates dulling debris and instantly leaves skin noticeably smoother and brighter. Can be used daily.

bioactivity score 5

top products to prescribe
• Daily Resurfacer
• Exfoliating Body Scrub
• Solar Defense Booster SPF30

Help a woman entrepreneur when you buy specially-marked Dermalogica products. Learn more at joinFITE.org.

application
Dispense about a half-teaspoon of Daily Microfoliant® into very wet hands and create a creamy paste by rubbing hands together. Apply to face in circular motions, avoiding the eye area. Massage gently for one minute, then rinse thoroughly. Follow with prescribed Dermalogica Toner and Moisturizer.

professional application

1. After performing the Dermalogica Double Cleanse, dispense approximately a half-teaspoon of Daily Microfoliant® into very wet hands and create a creamy paste by rubbing hands together.

2. Apply and massage over skin with small circular motions. Daily Microfoliant® may also be applied to the eyes and lips. Massage gently for 2 minutes.

3. Steam may be used to facilitate more slip-and-glide when lightly massaging over skin.

4. A warm steam towel or damp sponges may be used to ensure thorough removal of product.

optional:
To provide a “power boost” to Daily Microfoliant®, add 1 pump Exfoliant Accelerator 35 or 1 tube of MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant to the paste prior to application. Avoid the eyes and lips. Follow step 4 for removal.

For superior exfoliation, the use of electric brushes may be introduced with the paste.

contraindications for use
Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

key ingredients
Glycyrrhizate Glabra (Licorice), Oryza Sativa (Rice) and Citrus Grandis (Grapefruit): brightening complex helps even skin tone.

Oryza Sativa (Rice) Bran and Rice Extract: gently microfoliate the skin’s surface to facilitate penetration of the brightening complex.

Papain and Salicylic Acid: help dissolve excess surface cells.

benefits / top retailing points
Gentle enough for daily use.

Removes dulling surface debris to reveal brighter, smoother skin and stimulates cell renewal for improved suppleness.

Helps balance uneven pigmentation for a more even complexion.

The perfect daytime companion to nighttime use of Daily Resurfacer.
skin condition
All skin conditions, except users of medically-prescribed exfoliating products.

description
A precise dose of leave-on exfoliating treatment ideal for use between professional treatments. Hydroxy acids smooth skin without causing redness and help reduce the signs of premature aging. A brightening complex helps to even skin tone while soothing Rooibos and Green teas, combined with Hyaluronic Acid and Eelgrass, help skin retain moisture, reducing the appearance of fine lines.

bioactivity score 9

top products to prescribe
• Daily Microfoliant®
• Skin Hydrating Booster
• Solar Defense Booster SPF30

application
Perform the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse, followed by prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser. Pat dry. Tear open pouch and remove applicator. Place over index finger and apply in a circular motion by touching the applicator to the face. The specialized applicator allows you to work over areas of particular concern. Let dry. Use once daily after cleansing. Follow with prescribed Dermalogica Toner, Concentrated Booster and Moisturizer. For best results, use Daily Microfoliant® in the morning and Daily Resurfacer at night.

professional application
1. Remove cap and seal. Insert pump into bottle, twisting cap until firm.
2. Hold one sponge against the top of the pump disk and press down twice to saturate. (First use may require additional pumps.)
3. Apply after performing the Dermalogica Double Cleanse.
4. Apply after masque removal, before application of moisturizer.

contraindications for use
Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

key ingredients
Salicylic Acid: resurfaces and stimulates natural exfoliation.

Apple Fruit and Sugar Cane: extracts that stimulate cell renewal and cell turnover while gently sloughing surface cells.

Hyaluronic Acid and GAGs: glycosaminoglycans that hold up to 1,000 times their weight in water help to hydrate skin.

Zostera (Seagrass or Eelgrass): contains polysaccharides (sugars) that form a hydration net over skin’s surface that cushions and protects.

Citrus Unshiu Peel and Rice Extract: brighteners that help control melanin biosynthesis to help even out skin tone and control hyperpigmentation.

benefits / top retailing points
Chemical and physical exfoliants combine to deliver effective exfoliation.
The perfect nighttime companion to daytime use of Daily Microfoliant®

Resurfaces, smooths and brightens while evening skin tone to improve all-over skin clarity.

Shields against damaging free radicals while hydrating.
skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
This ultra-gentle brush works with your prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser to gently exfoliate dulling surface debris and impurities for effective cleansing.

top products to prescribe
• Skin Prep Scrub
• Prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser

application
Wet Exfoliating Face Brush. Apply a small amount of prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser to skin. Dampen and work over the skin. Using a circular motion, gently massaging over entire face. Avoid areas of sensitivity. Rinse well in tepid water and allow to air dry.

benefits / top retailing points
Enhances the action of Dermalogica Cleansers.

Gently exfoliates to remove dulling debris.

Hygienic, quick-drying nylon bristles.

Comes packaged in a convenient travel case.
Moisturizers are vital to every skin care regimen regardless of skin condition, and do more than just moisten dehydrated skin. Emollients (usually lipid substances) help lubricate skin while making it soft, pliable and smooth. Moisturizers also help to protect the skin’s natural defenses against the environment while controlling moisture loss from the skin. This becomes more important as we age, when the Stratum Corneum’s protective lipid barrier layer may be compromised or slower in replenishing itself.

Dermalogica has a moisturizer for every skin condition; from chronically dry and prematurely-aging to skin with excess oil production and breakouts.
skin condition
Skin with excess oil production.

description
A lightweight, oil-free lotion for daily moisture protection that actively combats surface dehydration while smoothing the skin’s surface with botanical extracts.

top products to prescribe
• Dermal Clay Cleanser
• Skin Prep Scrub
• Skin Refining Masque

application
Apply over damp face and throat with light, upward strokes. Best when used following Multi-Active Toner. Can be applied over or mixed with prescribed Dermalogica Concentrated Booster for additional results.

professional application
1. Following the application of Multi-Active Toner, apply Active Moist evenly to the face and throat and blend with the fingertips.
2. Customize with prescribed Dermalogica Concentrated Booster and follow with prescribed Daylight Defense.

key ingredients
Silk Amino Acids: help smooth and improve skin texture.

Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) Fruit, Hedera Helix (Ivy), Watercress and Burdock: natural astringents that help refine skin.

Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender), Malva Sylvestris (Mallow) and Cucumis Sativus (Cucumber) Fruit: soothing extracts that help provide deep hydration.

benefits / top retailing points
Provides effective oil-free hydration without leaving a greasy after-feel.
Smoothes and helps improve skin texture.
Sheer, easy-to-apply formula goes on smooth and absorbs quickly.

retail
1.7 Fl. Oz. / 50 mL
3.4 Fl. Oz. / 100 mL

professional
6 Fl. Oz. / 177 mL
skin smoothing cream

application
Apply over damp face and throat with light, upward strokes. Best when used following Multi-Active Toner. Can be applied over or mixed with prescribed Dermalogica Concentrated Booster for additional results.

professional application
1. Following the application of prescribed Dermalogica Toner, apply Skin Smoothing Cream evenly to the face and throat and blend with the fingertips.
2. Customize with prescribed Dermalogica Concentrated Booster and follow with prescribed Daylight Defense.

key ingredients
Retinyl Palmitate (Vitamin A): helps stimulate collagen and reverse the signs of prematurely-induced photoaging.
Silk Amino Acids: help smooth and improve skin texture.
Malva Sylvestris (Mallow), Cucumis Sativus (Cucumber) and Arnica Montana Flower: extracts that help soothe and hydrate the skin.
Vitis Vinifera (Grape) Seed, Ascorbyl Palmitate (Vitamin C) and Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E): antioxidants that help reduce free radical activity and stimulate collagen formation.
Aloe: moisturizes, promotes healing and helps prevent the appearance of dehydration lines.

benefits / top retailing points
Contains antioxidants to help fight skin-aging and skin damaging free radicals.
Smoothes fine lines and promotes elasticity.
Rich emollients help shield against dehydration and pollution.

skin condition
Dry, dehydrated or prematurely-aging skin.

description
A medium-weight cream with soothing botanicals and antioxidant vitamins to maintain skin’s moisture balance while improving texture, helping to restore suppleness and tone.

top products to prescribe
• Special Cleansing Gel
• Skin Hydrating Booster
• Skin Hydrating Masque

retail
1.7 Fl. Oz. / 50 mL
3.4 Fl. Oz. / 100 mL

professional
6 Fl. Oz. / 177 mL
skin condition
Dry or prematurely-aging skin.

description
An ultra-rich phytonutrient moisturizer designed to combat dry skin and reduce the signs of premature aging.

top products to prescribe
• Essential Cleansing Solution
• MultiVitamin Power Concentrate
• MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque

application
Apply over damp face and throat with light, upward strokes. Use twice daily, morning and night. Can be applied over or mixed with prescribed Dermalogica Concentrated Booster for additional results.

professional application
1. Following the application of prescribed Dermalogica Toner, apply Intensive Moisture Balance evenly to the face and throat and blend with the fingertips.
2. Customize with prescribed Dermalogica Concentrated Booster and follow with prescribed Daylight Defense.

key ingredients
Retinol (Vitamin A): helps increase skin elasticity and helps reverse the signs of prematurely-induced photoaging.
Ascorbyl Palmitate (Vitamin C), Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E) and Ginkgo Biloba: help prevent daily damage caused by free radicals, stimulate collagen formation and smooth skin texture.
Echinacea Purpurea (Coneflower) and Vitis Vinifera (Grape) Seed: help repair prematurely-aging skin, leaving it soft and supple.

benefits / top retailing points
Ideal for clients looking for a thicker cream.
Antioxidants help prevent daily damage caused by free radicals.
Strengthens skin’s lipid barrier to help prevent moisture loss while smoothing the appearance of fine lines.
sheer tint moisture spf15 / sheer moisture spf15

**application**
Smooth over cleansed face and throat with light, upward strokes. Apply in the morning or prior to sun exposure. For dehydrated skin, apply Skin Hydrating Booster prior to Sheer Tint Moisture SPF15 / Sheer Moisture SPF15. A prescribed Concentrated Booster can be applied as needed prior to Sheer Tint Moisture SPF15 / Sheer Moisture SPF15.

**professional application**
Following the application of Dermalogica Toner, apply Sheer Tint Moisture SPF15 (Medium) over face and throat with light, upward strokes.

**top products to prescribe**
- Multi-Active Toner
- Total Eye Care with SPF15
- Skin Hydrating Booster

**key ingredients**
- **Octinoxate and Zinc Oxide**: chemical and physical sunscreens that provide optimum UVA and UVB protection.
- **Dimethicone**: a skin-conditioning silicone that protects and reinforces barrier lipids which are often compromised in sensitive skin conditions.
- **Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B5)**: aids in skin repair and hydration.
- **Serine, Sorbitol, Glycerin and Urea**: humectants that hydrate skin.
- **Juglans Regia (Walnut) Seed**: a rich source of bioflavonoids that scavenges free radicals, protecting the skin against further environmental aggressions.
- **Olea Europaea (Olive) Fruit**: a water-soluble extract rich in antioxidant polyphenols that help fight free radical damage and control environmental aggressions.
- **Iron Oxide (Sheer Tint Moisture SPF15 only)**: a natural mineral; color pigments provide natural-looking coverage.

**benefits / top retailing points**
- Convenience of moisturization, sun protection and sheer color all in one.
- Provides oil-free hydration for moisturization without a greasy feel.
- Sunscreens help shield skin from damaging UV rays.
- Sheer color provided by natural Iron Oxide minerals (Sheer Tint Moisture SPF15 only).
Enhance the daily skin care regimen with powerful, problem-solving Dermalogica Masques. Designed for use one to three times per week based upon the client’s Face Mapping® skin analysis and professional prescription, each masque provides a dramatic boost to the skin. Whether the client requires super-deep cleansing or intensive hydration and nourishment, Dermalogica Masques are the ideal regimen supplement to help overcome skin concerns.
skin hydrating masque

application
Apply a smooth layer to clean face and throat. Allow masque to absorb for 7 to 10 minutes. Rinse with tepid water or remove with The Sponge Cloth. Use once or twice a week as prescribed.

key ingredients
- **Hyaluronic Acid**: provides increased hydration and improved elasticity.
- **Salicornia Extract**: a plant extract; helps reinforce skin’s Natural Moisturizing Factor and increase water content of skin.
- **Codium**: a green algae; helps regulate moisture content and water levels to provide in-depth moisturization.
- **Solanum Lycopersicum (Tomato) Seed Oil**: source of lycopene-rich lipids that help restore protective barrier lipids of skin.
- **Tocopherol (Vitamin E)**: antioxidant that helps repair daily damage caused by free radicals.
- **Canadian Willowherb (Epilobium)**: anti-irritant; helps calm skin.

benefits / top retailing points
- Can be used over the entire face and throat or as a hydrating eye and lip masque.
- Intensify hydration by applying Skin Hydrating Booster to skin before applying masque.
- Helps restore suppleness while minimizing the appearance of fine lines.
- Plant extracts help soothe and calm skin.

top products to prescribe
- Skin Hydrating Booster
- Daily Microfoliant®
- Multi-Active Toner

description
A refreshing, moisturizing masque to remedy dry, stressed skin. Unique cross-linked Hyaluronic Acid traps moisture to deliver time-released hydration for lasting suppleness. Help stimulate skin’s Natural Moisturizing Factor while lycopene-rich Tomato Seed lipids help restore skin’s protective barrier, enhancing moisture levels for healthier, smoother skin.

skin condition
All skin conditions.

top products to prescribe

- Skin Hydrating Booster
- Daily Microfoliant®
- Multi-Active Toner

application
Apply a smooth layer to clean face and throat. Allow masque to absorb for 7 to 10 minutes. Rinse with tepid water or remove with The Sponge Cloth. Use once or twice a week as prescribed.

key ingredients
- **Hyaluronic Acid**: provides increased hydration and improved elasticity.
- **Salicornia Extract**: a plant extract; helps reinforce skin’s Natural Moisturizing Factor and increase water content of skin.
- **Codium**: a green algae; helps regulate moisture content and water levels to provide in-depth moisturization.
- **Solanum Lycopersicum (Tomato) Seed Oil**: source of lycopene-rich lipids that help restore protective barrier lipids of skin.
- **Tocopherol (Vitamin E)**: antioxidant that helps repair daily damage caused by free radicals.
- **Canadian Willowherb (Epilobium)**: anti-irritant; helps calm skin.

benefits / top retailing points
- Can be used over the entire face and throat or as a hydrating eye and lip masque.
- Intensify hydration by applying Skin Hydrating Booster to skin before applying masque.
- Helps restore suppleness while minimizing the appearance of fine lines.
- Plant extracts help soothe and calm skin.

top products to prescribe
- Skin Hydrating Booster
- Daily Microfoliant®
- Multi-Active Toner

application
Apply a smooth layer to clean face and throat. Allow masque to absorb for 7 to 10 minutes. Rinse with tepid water or remove with The Sponge Cloth. Use once or twice a week as prescribed.

key ingredients
- **Hyaluronic Acid**: provides increased hydration and improved elasticity.
- **Salicornia Extract**: a plant extract; helps reinforce skin’s Natural Moisturizing Factor and increase water content of skin.
- **Codium**: a green algae; helps regulate moisture content and water levels to provide in-depth moisturization.
- **Solanum Lycopersicum (Tomato) Seed Oil**: source of lycopene-rich lipids that help restore protective barrier lipids of skin.
- **Tocopherol (Vitamin E)**: antioxidant that helps repair daily damage caused by free radicals.
- **Canadian Willowherb (Epilobium)**: anti-irritant; helps calm skin.

benefits / top retailing points
- Can be used over the entire face and throat or as a hydrating eye and lip masque.
- Intensify hydration by applying Skin Hydrating Booster to skin before applying masque.
- Helps restore suppleness while minimizing the appearance of fine lines.
- Plant extracts help soothe and calm skin.

key ingredients
- **Hyaluronic Acid**: provides increased hydration and improved elasticity.
- **Salicornia Extract**: a plant extract; helps reinforce skin’s Natural Moisturizing Factor and increase water content of skin.
- **Codium**: a green algae; helps regulate moisture content and water levels to provide in-depth moisturization.
- **Solanum Lycopersicum (Tomato) Seed Oil**: source of lycopene-rich lipids that help restore protective barrier lipids of skin.
- **Tocopherol (Vitamin E)**: antioxidant that helps repair daily damage caused by free radicals.
- **Canadian Willowherb (Epilobium)**: anti-irritant; helps calm skin.

benefits / top retailing points
- Can be used over the entire face and throat or as a hydrating eye and lip masque.
- Intensify hydration by applying Skin Hydrating Booster to skin before applying masque.
- Helps restore suppleness while minimizing the appearance of fine lines.
- Plant extracts help soothe and calm skin.
skin condition
Skin with excess oil production.

description
This deep-cleansing clay masque helps minimize oily skin breakouts. Use all-over or exclusively in the T-Zone after cleansing to help purify, lift surface impurities and wick away excess oils that can trigger breakouts. Help minimize acne-causing bacteria with an active blend of Cedar, Green Tea, Grapefruit, Tea Tree and Magnolia. Calm and refresh without over-drying for smoother skin texture.

top products to prescribe
- Dermal Clay Cleanser
- Skin Prep Scrub
- Active Moist

application
Apply a smooth film to cleansed face and throat, avoiding the eye area. Allow masque to set for 7 to 10 minutes. Rinse thoroughly with warm water or remove with The Sponge Cloth. Use once or twice a week as prescribed.

key ingredients
Bentonite and Kaolin: clays that help absorb excess oil, refine pores and clear congestion.

Thujopsis Dolabrata Branch Extract (Cedar), Magnolia Kobus Bark Extract and Camellia Sinensis Leaf Extract, Citrus Grandis (Grapefruit) Fruit Extract: An active blend of Cedar, Magnolia, Green Tea and Grapefruit provide potent anti-inflammatory properties; active against acne-causing bacteria.

Zinc Oxide and Menthol: help soothe skin.

Lens Esculenta (Lentil) Seed Extract: helps reduce sebum production; smoothes skin and limits shine.

benefits / top retailing points
Contains cooling Menthol, which feels refreshing on oily skin.

Use over entire face and neck or specifically in the T-zone.

Helps absorb excess oils from the skin’s surface while refining skin’s texture.

Removes dead skin cells and surface impurities, which helps reduce oily-skin breakouts.

Purifies skin without over-stripping.
intensive moisture masque

**skin condition**
Dry or prematurely-aging skin.

**description**
A creamy, moisture-replenishing masque that provides vital nourishment for dry skin, helping to alleviate fine lines and visible dryness.

**top products to prescribe**
- Essential Cleansing Solution
- Intensive Moisture Balance
- Intensive Eye Repair

**application**
Apply generously to clean face and throat, avoiding the eye area. Allow masque to set for 7 to 10 minutes. Rinse thoroughly with warm water or remove with The Sponge Cloth. Use once or twice a week as prescribed.

**professional application**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Task</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Apply evenly with Fan Masque Brush to the face, throat and décolleté.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>For added hydration, apply Colloidal Masque Base to the eyes and lips.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Place damp gauze over the eyes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Remove after 10 minutes by using damp sponges or warm steam towels customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**optional:**
The introduction of Multi-Active Toner or the prescribed Botanical Mixer pulverized onto skin may aid with thorough removal.

**key ingredients**
- Ascorbyl Palmitate (Vitamin C), Tocopherol (Vitamin E) and Ginkgo Biloba: antioxidants that help repair daily damage caused by free radicals.
- Oenothera Biennis (Evening Primrose): oil that conditions skin, restoring softness and suppleness.
- Honey: helps replenish and bind moisture to skin.

**benefits / top retailing points**
- Helps revitalize skin, providing a more radiant appearance.
- Binds critical moisture to skin, alleviating visible dryness and fine lines.
- Superior skin conditioners help restore skin softness, moisture and suppleness.

---

**retail**
- 2.5 Fl. Oz. / 75 mL

**professional**
- 6 Fl. Oz. / 177 mL
Concentrated Boosters are highly-active extracts that can be used to customize a client’s regimen on a day-to-day basis. Designed to be used alone for targeted results, mixed in with Dermalogica Moisturizers or applied underneath Masques, Concentrated Boosters are the perfect way for clients to take control of skin’s natural fluctuations. Their versatility makes them ideal in adapting any at-home regimen to the changes in climate, hormonal imbalance or lifestyle.
skin hydration booster

**skin condition**
All skin conditions.

**description**
A super-saturated hydrating fluid that intensely moisturizes thirsty skin as it smooths and minimizes fine lines.

**top products to prescribe**
- Multi-Active Toner
- Daily Resurfacer
- Skin Hydrating Masque

Help a woman entrepreneur when you buy specially-marked Dermalogica products. Learn more at joinFITE.org.

**application**
Squeeze 6 to 10 drops onto fingertips and massage gently over face and throat. Follow with prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer. Can also be used underneath prescribed Dermalogica Masque. Can also be mixed with prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer then applied to face and throat.

**key ingredients**
- **Hyaluronic Acid**: holds 1000 times its weight in water for powerful hydration.
- **Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B₅)**: aids in skin repair and hydration.
- **Algae Extract**: nutrient rich; helps restore moisture balance while softening skin.

**benefits / top retailing points**
- Hydrates tissues to smooth skin, improve suppleness and minimize the appearance of fine lines.
- Non-greasy formula suitable for all skin conditions.
- Restores barrier layer to retain critical moisture levels.
- Revitalizes parched skin.

---

1 Fl. Oz. / 30 mL
gentle soothing booster

**skin condition**
Sensitive and sensitized skin.

**description**
A concentrated, oil-free complex of ultra-soothing botanicals and healing Honey that calms and hydrates irritated or sensitized skin.

**top products to prescribe**
- UltraCalming™ Cleanser
- UltraCalming™ Mist
- Barrier Repair

**application**
Squeeze 6 to 10 drops onto fingertips and massage gently over face and throat. Follow with prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer. Can be used underneath prescribed Dermalogica Masque. Can also be mixed with prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer then applied to face and throat.

**key ingredients**
- **Rubus Idaeus (Raspberry) Fruit**: a soothing extract that helps calm sensitive skin and aggravation.
- **Honey**: helps replenish and bind moisture to skin.
- **Calendula Officinalis Flower, Chamomilla Recutita (Matricaria) Flower and Centaurea Cyanus (Cornflower)**: calming extracts that instantly reduce irritation.

**benefits / top retailing points**
- Can be used to soothe a variety of irritation, whether caused by sensitivity, windburn or breakouts.
- Oil-free formula acts as a humectant without leaving a greasy feel.
- Helps control redness brought on by irritation, or caused by delicate or sensitive skin.
- Can be used in key areas such as the cheeks, or applied all over the face.

1 Fl. Oz. / 30 mL
**skin condition**
Dry or prematurely-aging skin.

**description**
A rich, super-concentrated retexturizing fluid of firming botanicals that visibly firms and smooths skin’s surface while vitamins and proteins help strengthen internal structure.

**top products to prescribe**
- Skin Resurfacing Cleanser
- Intensive Moisture Balance
- MultiVitamin Power Concentrate

**application**
Squeeze 6 to 10 drops onto fingertips and massage gently over face and throat. Follow with prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer. Can be used underneath prescribed Dermalogica Masque. Can also be mixed with prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer then applied to face and throat.

**key ingredients**
- **Seaweed and Equisetum Hiemale (Horsetail):** help firm skin.
- **Protein Peptides:** help firm skin.
- **Trifolium Pratense (Red Clover) Flower:** improves skin texture and helps restore moisture.
- **Sodium Ascorbyl Phosphate (Vitamin C):** an antioxidant that helps correct the signs of premature aging.

**benefits / top retailing points**
- Provides a flash-firming effect to visibly boost skin’s firmness and moisture levels.
- Noticeably restores suppleness and diminishes the appearance of fine dryness lines.
- Helps defend skin against damaging free radicals.
skin renewal booster

skin condition
All skin conditions, except sensitive and sensitized.

description
An exfoliating complex of hydroxy acids and soothing plant extracts to actively loosen dead surface debris, smooth the skin and improve texture.

top products to prescribe
- MultiVitamin Power Firm
- Super Rich Repair
- Skin Hydrating Masque

application
Squeeze 6 to 10 drops onto fingertips and massage gently over face and throat. Follow with prescribed Dermalogica Toner and Moisturizer. Can be used underneath prescribed Dermalogica Masque. Can also be mixed with prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer then applied to face and throat.

contraindications for use
Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

key ingredients
- Lactic Acid, Salicylic Acid and Hibiscus Rosa-Sinensis Fruit: exfoliating complex that actively loosens dead surface debris.
- Aloe, Chamomilla Recutita (Matricaria) Flower and Centaurea Cyanus (Cornflower): extracts soothe and help hydrate.
- Retinol (Vitamin A): helps increase skin elasticity and helps reverse the signs of prematurely-induced photoaging.

benefits / top retailing points
- Promotes exfoliation, which leads to an improved skin texture and helps minimize the signs of premature aging.
- Helps reverse the signs of photoaging.
- Loosens surface debris to help minimize breakouts and congestion and bring newer cells to the surface.
- Helps stimulate new skin cell production which leads to increased skin flexibility and smoothness.
targeted treatments

Unlike the other formulas in the Dermalogica retail line, Targeted Treatments are designed to zone-in on specific areas of the face, rather than focus on overall conditions. They are each highly individualized in their application, and have a specialized role in the at-home regimen. The Targeted Treatment products you’ll prescribe will be based heavily on the Face Mapping® skin analysis you conduct on each client. You should explain to your clients that the different zones of their faces each have specific needs — needs that can change daily! As such, find Dermalogica Targeted Treatments for specific concerns and conditions in their respective AGE Smart®, ChromaWhite TRx®, UltraCalming™ and MediBac Clearing® sections.
skin condition
Sensitive and environmentally-sensitized skin.

description
A therapeutic balm formulated with exclusive Anti-Ozonate Complex to help heal acutely damaged skin and provide a barrier against future climatic assaults.

top products to prescribe
• UltraCalming™ Cleanser
• UltraCalming™ Mist
• Barrier Repair

climate control lip treatment

application
Gently glide Climate Control over the lips. Apply at least once a day or as needed.

key ingredients
Anti-Ozonate Complex: comprised of Fumaric Acid, Fumaria Officinalis (Fumitory) Extract and Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) Fruit. Shields lips from environmental influences such as pollution, temperature extremes, irritating cosmetic products, stress, poor diet or hormonal factors.

Butyrospermum Parkii (Shea Butter): enhances the barrier function.

Superoxide Dismutase, Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E), Avena Sativa (Oat) and Bisabolol: help boost the skin’s natural defense system.

Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender): a naturally antiseptic extract. Helps soothe and purify while ensuring hygienic application.

benefits / top retailing points
Protective formula glides easily over lips to help prevent further environmental assault.

Works amazing on lips that are raw or peeling.

Enhances skin’s natural lipid barrier.

Ideal for use during outdoor sports or air travel.

0.15 Oz. / 4.5 g
The skin around the eyes is thinner and more delicate, which means it is extra susceptible and more likely to be the first place to show any signs of skin damage caused by environmental assaults. Protect the health and appearance of the eye area with our Eye Treatments, designed to shield against environmental assaults while nourishing, hydrating, brightening and minimizing the appearance of dark circles due to hyperpigmentation and fine lines due to dehydration.
**soothing eye make-up remover**

**application**
Apply a small amount to wet cotton. Remove eye and lip make-up by gently massaging over the area. Rinse thoroughly with warm water.

**professional application**

1. Spread a pea-sized amount across three dampened cotton pads.
2. Place one pad over each eye.
3. Gently cleanse the lips, removing lip make-up with the third pad, ensuring firm but gentle support of the mouth.
4. Cleanse the eye area by gently wiping above the eyelashes and then below. Concentrate on cleansing through the brow line. Ensure firm but gentle support of the eye.
5. Wipe down the lashes to enable removal of mascara.
6. Repeat on the other eye.
7. Damp sponges or The Sponge Cloth and warm water should be used to remove all traces of Soothing Eye Make-Up Remover.

**key ingredients**

- **Silk Amino Acids:** help smooth and improve skin texture while helping to strengthen lashes and condition surrounding areas.

- **Citric Acid:** helps maintain pH-balance.

**benefits / top retailing points**

Clean rinsing and conditioning formula allows for sting-free make-up removal, without dehydrating the delicate eye area. Won’t leave an oily residue on the eyes.

---

**skin condition**
All skin conditions.

**description**
An oil-free, S.D. alcohol-free and water-soluble gentle gel specially formulated to instantly dissolve all traces of eye and lip make-up, including stubborn mascara.

**top products to prescribe**
- Total Eye Care with SPF15
- Skin Hydrating Masque
- Intensive Eye Repair

---

**retail**
- 4 Fl. Oz. / 120 mL

**professional**
- 8 Fl. Oz. / 237 mL
skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
An advanced alpha hydroxy eye treatment cream with sunscreen protection to help protect and repair the delicate eye area while reducing the appearance of dark circles and lines.

top products to prescribe
• Solar Defense Booster SPF30
• Sheer Tint Moisture SPF15 and Sheer Moisture SPF15
• Extra Firming Booster

Help a woman entrepreneur when you buy specially-marked Dermalogica products. Learn more at joinFITE.org.

application
After cleansing in the morning, gently pat around the entire eye area, blending inward from the outer corner. Can be applied over Extra Firming Booster or Skin Hydrating Booster.

key ingredients
Titanium Dioxide: a chemical-free, physical sunscreen that provides optimum UVA and UVB protection.

Lactic Acid: an alpha hydroxy acid that smooths and retexturizes.

Sodium PCA: a moisture-binding protein that acts as a humectant to allow for more efficient moisture absorption.

Spiraea, Hydrocotyl and Bisabolol: extracts that help firm and reduce puffiness and fine lines.

Mica: minerals that help reflect light and create an iridescence.

benefits / top retailing points
Contains chemical-free SPF to help prevent further damage caused by UV rays.

Smooths and retexturizes to help diminish fine dryness lines.

Helps to reduce puffiness, restores translucency and freshness to the eye area.

Optical light diffusers help minimize dark circles.

0.5 Fl. Oz. / 15 mL
Skin Condition
Dry or prematurely-aging skin.

Description
An ultra-rich cream of skin-replenishing phytonutrients, antioxidant vitamins and soothing botanicals to help diminish dry lines and repair damage around the delicate eye area.

Top Products to Prescribe
- Essential Cleansing Solution
- Intensive Moisture Balance
- Daily Resurfacer

Help a woman entrepreneur when you buy specially-marked Dermalogica products. Learn more at joinFITE.org.

Key Ingredients
Cucumis Sativus (Cucumber), Butcherbroom and Arnica Montana: soothing extracts that help maintain the skin’s elasticity and texture.
Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B5) and Retinyl Palmitate (Vitamin A): help repair prematurely-aging skin.
Ascorbyl Palmitate (Vitamin C), Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E), Grape Seed Extract, Ginkgo Biloba and Camellia Sinensis (Green Tea): help defend skin against free radicals, smooth delicate eye tissue and stimulate collagen synthesis.

Benefits / Top Retailing Points
Ideal for clients who prefer an emollient eye treatment.
Helps repair the signs of photoaging skin while antioxidants defend against further damage.
Diminishes the appearance of fine lines by infusing skin with hydration.
Soothing botanicals and phytonutrients help return skin to optimum health and restore suppleness.

Application
After cleansing, gently pat around the eye area, blending inward from the outer corner. Can be applied over Extra Firming Booster or Skin Hydrating Booster.

Retail
0.5 Fl. Oz. / 15 mL
Daily grooming is a part of maintaining and improving not only the appearance, but the psyche as well. Daily grooming rituals are key to our state-of-mind, self-esteem and total skin health. Dermalogica’s Daily Groomers help clients extend their skin health regimens to areas of the body that will benefit from cleansing, hydration, antioxidants and soothing botanicals as much as the face does.

Locate additional Dermalogica Daily Groomers in their respective AGE Smart® and Shave sections.
environmental control deodorant

application
Thoroughly apply to underarms after bathing or showering.

key ingredients
Clove Flower, Hyssopus Officinalis (Hyssop) and Coriandrum Sativum (Coriander) Fruit: help control body odor.

Cananga Odorata Flower (Ylang-Ylang), Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender), Eucalyptus Globulus (Eucalyptus) Leaf, Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) Peel, Rosmarinus Officinalis (Rosemary) Leaf and Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree) Leaf: an essential oil blend that helps fight odor while controlling bacteria responsible for malodorous metabolites.

Carum Petroselinum (Parsley) Seed: helps reduce irritation while neutralizing strong odors.

Silica (Microscopic Algae): absorbs sweat without leaving residue on skin or clothing.

benefits / top retailing points
An aluminum-free, safe alternative to potentially-irritating anti-perspirants.

Won’t stain clothing and leaves no white residue.

Fortified with a refreshing, aromatic blend of essential oils to naturally fight odor.

Bacteriostats and bacteriacides help inhibit and eliminate odor-causing bacteria.

Formulated in a soothing Aloe Barbadensis (Aloe) Leaf Juice, Melissa Officinalis Leaf (Balm Mint) and Chamomilla Recutita (Chamomile) base.

top products to prescribe
• The Ultimate Buffing Cloth
• Body Hydrating Cream
• Conditioning Body Wash

skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
A glide-on stick deodorant with natural odor protection suitable even for sensitive skin or allergy-prone individuals.

application
Thoroughly apply to underarms after bathing or showering.

key ingredients
Clove Flower, Hyssopus Officinalis (Hyssop) and Coriandrum Sativum (Coriander) Fruit: help control body odor.

Cananga Odorata Flower (Ylang-Ylang), Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender), Eucalyptus Globulus (Eucalyptus) Leaf, Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) Peel, Rosmarinus Officinalis (Rosemary) Leaf and Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree) Leaf: an essential oil blend that helps fight odor while controlling bacteria responsible for malodorous metabolites.

Carum Petroselinum (Parsley) Seed: helps reduce irritation while neutralizing strong odors.

Silica (Microscopic Algae): absorbs sweat without leaving residue on skin or clothing.

benefits / top retailing points
An aluminum-free, safe alternative to potentially-irritating anti-perspirants.

Won’t stain clothing and leaves no white residue.

Fortified with a refreshing, aromatic blend of essential oils to naturally fight odor.

Bacteriostats and bacteriacides help inhibit and eliminate odor-causing bacteria.

Formulated in a soothing Aloe Barbadensis (Aloe) Leaf Juice, Melissa Officinalis Leaf (Balm Mint) and Chamomilla Recutita (Chamomile) base.

top products to prescribe
• The Ultimate Buffing Cloth
• Body Hydrating Cream
• Conditioning Body Wash

skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
A glide-on stick deodorant with natural odor protection suitable even for sensitive skin or allergy-prone individuals.

top products to prescribe
• The Ultimate Buffing Cloth
• Body Hydrating Cream
• Conditioning Body Wash

application
Thoroughly apply to underarms after bathing or showering.

key ingredients
Clove Flower, Hyssopus Officinalis (Hyssop) and Coriandrum Sativum (Coriander) Fruit: help control body odor.

Cananga Odorata Flower (Ylang-Ylang), Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender), Eucalyptus Globulus (Eucalyptus) Leaf, Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) Peel, Rosmarinus Officinalis (Rosemary) Leaf and Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree) Leaf: an essential oil blend that helps fight odor while controlling bacteria responsible for malodorous metabolites.

Carum Petroselinum (Parsley) Seed: helps reduce irritation while neutralizing strong odors.

Silica (Microscopic Algae): absorbs sweat without leaving residue on skin or clothing.

benefits / top retailing points
An aluminum-free, safe alternative to potentially-irritating anti-perspirants.

Won’t stain clothing and leaves no white residue.

Fortified with a refreshing, aromatic blend of essential oils to naturally fight odor.

Bacteriostats and bacteriacides help inhibit and eliminate odor-causing bacteria.

Formulated in a soothing Aloe Barbadensis (Aloe) Leaf Juice, Melissa Officinalis Leaf (Balm Mint) and Chamomilla Recutita (Chamomile) base.

top products to prescribe
• The Ultimate Buffing Cloth
• Body Hydrating Cream
• Conditioning Body Wash

skin condition
All skin conditions.
shine therapy shampoo

skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
A gentle, therapeutic, daily use shampoo that infuses hair with brilliant shine.

top products to prescribe
• Conditioning Body Wash
• UltraRich Body Cream
• Silk Finish Conditioner

application
Massage over wet hair and scalp and work into a rich lather. Rinse thoroughly with warm water.

key ingredients
Quillaja Saponaria Bark, Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) and Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree): clarifying extracts that purify and help stimulate the scalp.

Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender), Cananga Odorata (Ylang-Ylang) Flower and Eucalyptus Globulus (Eucalyptus) Leaf: extracts that help remove excess oils and debris, restoring lift and bounce.

Citric Acid: helps reduce flakiness and helps maintain pH-balance.

benefits / top retailing points
Clarifying formula eliminates build-up and delivers superior cleansing you can feel.

Rich essential oils and botanical extracts deliver incredible shine and manageability.

Helps strengthen hair and purify the scalp.

Thoroughly cleanses and revitalizes the scalp, yet gentle enough for everyday use.

8 Fl. Oz. / 237 mL
skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
An ultra-polishing hair conditioner that’s light enough for daily use and gives hair a healthy silk finish.

top products to prescribe
• Shine Therapy Shampoo
• Environmental Control Deodorant
• Body Hydrating Cream

application
 Massage a small amount over hair and scalp. For extra conditioning, allow to penetrate for several minutes. Rinse thoroughly with warm water.

key ingredients
Wheat Proteins, Retinyl Palmitate (Vitamin A) and Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B5): nourish and repair hair, giving it brilliant shine and manageability.

Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) Peel, Eucalyptus Globulus Leaf and Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree) Leaf: cleansing essential oils that help detangle and smooth the hair cuticle.

Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender) Extract and Cananga Odorata (Ylang-Ylang): give hair a soft sheen and silky finish.

benefits / top retailing points
Smoothes damaged hair cuticles and helps increase manageability while controlling flyaways.

Light but rich formula helps detangle while infusing hair with shine and a silky finish.

Relieves and prevents itching and irritation of dry scalp conditions.
Dermalogica Treatment Foundation meets the very highest formula standards, blending the best of make-up with the ultimate in skin care. The oil-free formula is completely non-comedogenic, providing an antioxidant moisture shield that won’t leave the skin feeling greasy or cakey. Naturally-derived pigments blend in smoothly for flawless coverage that stays true, all without sensitizing the skin. An ultra-fine molecular suspension system combines treatment ingredients with natural color pigments to even-out skin tones and blend-out fine, dry lines. Choose from a complete selection of eight shades, designed to maintain true color and even texture. To match foundation to skin tone, always apply in natural daylight. Test the color on the side of the cheek, near the jaw line.
treatment foundation

application
Dot on each area of the face. Blend with provided application sponge or with fingertips. Do not rub. Wait one minute before applying powder or blush.

key ingredients
Sodium PCA: a moisture-binding protein that acts as a humectant to allow for more effective moisture absorption.

Retinyl Palmitate (Vitamin A): helps increase skin elasticity and helps reverse the signs of prematurely-induced photoaging.

Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E): a rich antioxidant vitamin that improves skin smoothness and softness.

Iron Oxide: a natural mineral; color pigments provide natural-looking coverage.

benefits / top retailing points
Your last step in skin care, your first step in make-up!

Oil-free, water-based formula provides coverage from sheer to full and concealing.

Contains natural color pigments with skin conditioners to help hydrate and protect skin.

Comes with two hypo-allergenic application sponges.

skin condition
All skin conditions, including skin with excess oil production and skin prone to breakouts.

description
A lightweight, oil-free, water-based liquid make-up that provides flawless coverage while moisturizing and protecting skin.

top products to prescribe
• Solar Defense Booster SPF30
• Daily Microfoliant®
• Total Eye Care with SPF15

retail
1.3 Fl. Oz. / 40 mL
At Dermalogica, our focus has always been on the Professional Skin Therapist. That’s why you’ll find our professional-use-only system is the most robust in the industry – and the most effective for getting treatment room results. Dermalogica’s professional-use-only products are never available to the public, meaning you have exclusive access to the most powerful formulas that deliver immediate results that keep your professional skin treatments thriving. To use Dermalogica’s professional-use-only products to their maximum potential, experience them hands-on in Dermalogica classes. It’s the only place where your hands and our advanced education combine to create professional treatments and professional results you can’t get with any other product line.

**the core treatment range**

In addition to Dermalogica professional-use-only products, we also provide economical sizes of many of our retail formulas for the treatment room. These include the treatment essentials, including cleansing, toning, exfoliating and moisturizing and are designed to work with the entire professional-use-only range.

**The following retail products are available in professional sizes:**

**cleansers**
- PreCleanse
- Dermal Clay Cleanser
- Special Cleansing Gel
- Essential Cleansing Solution

**toner**
- Multi-Active Toner

**exfoliants**
- Gentle Cream Exfoliant
- Skin Prep Scrub
- Daily Microfoliant®
- Daily Resurfacer

**moisturizers**
- Active Moist
- Skin Smoothing Cream
- Intensive Moisture Balance
- Sheer Tint Moisture SPF15 (Medium)

**masques**
- Intensive Moisture Masque

**eye treatments**
- Soothing Eye Make-Up Remover

**daylight defense**
- Solar Defense Booster SPF30

**body therapy**
- Conditioning Body Wash
- Hydro-Active Mineral Salts
- Body Hydrating Cream
- UltraRich Body Cream

**AGE smart®**
- Skin Resurfacing Cleanser
- Antioxidant HydraMist
- MultiVitamin Thermafoliant®
- Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30
- Super Rich Repair
- MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque
- MultiVitamin Power Firm

**ChromaWhite TRx®**
- Tri-Active Cleanse
- Pure Light SPF30
- Pure Night

**UltraCalming™**
- UltraCalming™ Cleanser
- UltraCalming™ Mist
- UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate
- Barrier Repair

**mediBac clearing®**
- Clearing Skin Wash
- Sebum Clearing Masque
- Oil Control Lotion

**professional-use-only range**

The professional-use-only range contains the most innovative and most powerful Dermalogica products. Due to the high concentration of actives, we advise that you carefully read all information before treatment room usage and follow all professional application directions.
The human skin produces about one million skin cells every 40 minutes, which equates to over 36 million skin cells per day. As our skin cells renew from the deepest layer of the epidermis, the more surface cells harden and lose moisture. Eventually these cells detach from skin (via desquamation) and are replaced by younger cells moving up from the deeper layers. The rate at which new cells form in the Stratum Germinativum (also known as Stratum Basale) is known as cell renewal rate; the time it takes for the cells to form in these deeper layers until the time of desquamation is known as the cell turnover time. Desquamation also eliminates damaged and contaminated cells that carry pollutants and micro-organisms from the environment. These superficial skin cells don’t always effectively fall from skin and may cause clogging and congestion while leaving the skin’s surface dry and dull-looking. As we age, desquamation and cell turnover slow down, making professional exfoliation critical to removing the accumulation of cells that
give a dry, dull appearance to the skin. Through professional exfoliation, these dulling skin cells are effectively removed, and newer cells are revealed for a fresher, healthier appearance. Similarly, removing the excess barricade of cells from the skin’s surface helps ingredients penetrate through the skin. As such, exfoliation is a critical step in any skin health regimen. Dermalogica’s Exfoliants combine many unique technologies, ensuring maximum effectiveness and the utmost safety. Depending on the formula, your Dermalogica Exfoliant can include Lactic Acid, Salicylic Acid, Retinol, Sulfur or enzyme peeling to give a total exfoliation system. Dermalogica professional Exfoliants are pH balanced, do not strip skin of essential moisture and leave skin feeling and looking extremely smooth and clear.

When The International Dermal Institute developed The Dermalogica Exfoliation Level System, it was created to establish the strength of Dermalogica Exfoliants and help with the proper selection of products. The Dermalogica Exfoliation Level System also enables you to customize our current chemical exfoliants while maintaining an understanding of the relative strength and intensity when two products are mixed. Our previous level system ranged from Level 1 to Level 3, based upon their relative strength. With the addition of our more powerful Exfoliant Accelerator 35, we have added a Level 4. This level represents the use of Exfoliant Accelerator 35 when used alone on skin. Level 1 Exfoliants are the mildest and Level 4 (Exfoliant Accelerator 35) is the strongest. In order to understand how The Dermalogica Exfoliant Level System works, it is necessary to explain how it was established.

**figure 1**

An electron micrograph of a desmosome (at tip of white arrow): the point where two cells connect to one another. The desmosome consists of Calcium-dependent proteins to help maintain the attachment. Loosening the desmosome attachment allows cells to separate and be exfoliated from skin.

**figure 2**

**how lactic acid works on skin**

- Lactic Acid normalizes cell turnover and cell cohesion
- Increases glycosaminoglycans and collagen synthesis
- Increases ceramides (barrier function) and reduces Trans-Epidermal Water Loss
- Inhibits melanin formation
Each of the exfoliation products was given a BioActivity Score based on four specific criteria of the formula: 1.) the concentration of Lactic Acid, 2.) the concentration of Salicylic Acid, 3.) the pH of the formula and 4.) the presence of other exfoliating agents such as Papain, Bromelain, Retinol, Rice Bran, Rice Extract, Corn Cob Meal and newer additions to Exfoliant Accelerator 35, including Galactoarabian, Aminopeptidase, and Hexanoyl Di peptide-3 Norleucine Acetate. A point system was devised for each of these four categories that reflects the concentration or activity of the ingredients. For example, the Salicylic Acid concentration was analyzed and points were assigned accordingly. If the product formula contains less than 1% Salicylic Acid, then the product received 1 point for this category. If it contains 1.1 – 3% Salicylic Acid, it received 2 points. From 3.1 – 5%, 3 points were assigned, and from 5.1 and up, 4 points were assigned. A similar analysis was conducted for the Lactic Acid concentration, the pH and the concentration of other exfoliating agents (as listed above). The scores were then added together to give the final BioActivity Score for each product. The scores for Dermalogica professional exfoliation products are as follows:
The calculation of the BioActivity Scores for customized combinations is done by taking an average of the Dermalogica products selected. To calculate the BioActivity Score of Daily Microfoliant® when mixed with MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant, add the BioActivity Scores of the individual products and divide by the number of products mixed, which is 2. For example:

Daily Microfoliant® (5) + MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant (25) = 30
30 divided by 2 (the number of products) = 15
Therefore, the customized combination of Daily Microfoliant® and MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant has a BioActivity Score of 15.

When mixing Daily Microfoliant® with Exfoliant Accelerator 35 the calculation is:
Daily Microfoliant® (5) + Exfoliant Accelerator 35 (35) = 40
40 divided by 2 (the number of products) = 20

Plotting the relative strengths or (BioActivity Scores) across all professional Dermalogica Exfoliant combinations looks like this:

Note: Never mix more than two Dermalogica Professional Exfoliants together.
# exfoliation product selection and instructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>dermalogica product</th>
<th>bioactivity score</th>
<th>skin condition</th>
<th>application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Skin Prep Scrub</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Apply with damp hands to face and neck, massaging gently onto the face. Avoid eye area. Rinse thoroughly with warm water and sponges.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily Microfoliant®</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Dispense ½ teaspoon into very wet hands. Create a paste (add more water if necessary) and massage over face for 1 to 2 minutes. Remove with sponges or steam towel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily Resurfacer</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Hold one sponge applicator against the top of the pump disk and depress twice to saturate. Apply after performing the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse, followed by recommended Dermalogica cleanser, or before toning. There is no need to remove product from skin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enzymatic Base, Part A</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Excess oil production, breakouts</td>
<td>Mix 1 scoop with 1 teaspoon of water and apply with a Fan Masque Brush. Rinse off thoroughly with sponges and tepid water, or a steam towel customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiVitamin Thermafoliant®</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>Prematurely-aging or aging</td>
<td>Apply to damp skin and massage in light, circular motions for 1-2 minutes. Remove with damp sponges, or steam towels customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin Exfoliant System</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>Skin with excess oil production, skin prone to breakouts</td>
<td>Blend one scoop (1 tablespoon) Enzymatic Base, Part A with ¼ teaspoon Acidic Activator, Part B until creamy smooth. Apply to skin with Fan Masque Brush and allow to activate for 10 minutes. Remove with sponges or steam towel. Use steam for sensitive skin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentle Cream Exfoliant</td>
<td>14</td>
<td>All, except sensitized</td>
<td>Apply to face and neck with Fan Masque Brush. Remove after 10 minutes with damp sponges, or a steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily Microfoliant® + MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Dispense ½ teaspoon Daily Microfoliant® into wet hands. Add 1 tube MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant to create a paste (add water if necessary). Massage over face for 1 to 2 minutes. Avoid eye area. Remove with the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse, followed by Special Cleansing Gel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily Microfoliant® + Exfoliant Accelerator 35</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>All</td>
<td>Dispense ½ teaspoon Daily Microfoliant® into wet hands. Add 1 pump (¼ teaspoon) of Exfoliant Accelerator 35 to create a paste. Mix and massage over face for 2 to 3 minutes. Avoid eye area. Remove with sponges or steam towel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiVitamin Thermafoliant® + Exfoliant Accelerator 35</td>
<td>22.5</td>
<td>Prematurely-aging or aging skin. Not for sensitized or skin with an impaired barrier.</td>
<td>Massage 1 tablespoon of MultiVitamin Thermafoliant® over dry skin, then add 1 pump of Exfoliant Accelerator 35 into your hands and massage over skin for 3 minutes. Rinse with sponges and tepid water, or a steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin Exfoliant System + Exfoliant Accelerator 35</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>All, especially skin with breakouts and excess oil production.</td>
<td>Blend one scoop (1 tablespoon) Enzymatic Base, Part A with ¼ teaspoon Acidic Activator, Part B and 1 pump (¼ teaspoon) of Exfoliant Accelerator 35 until creamy smooth. Apply to skin with Fan Masque Brush and allow to activate for 10 minutes. Avoid eye area. Remove with sponges or steam towel. Use steam for sensitive skin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentle Cream Exfoliant + Exfoliant Accelerator 35</td>
<td>24.5</td>
<td>All, except sensitized</td>
<td>Customize Gentle Cream Exfoliant with 1 pump Exfoliant Accelerator 35 and mix in a jelly cup. Apply with Fan Masque Brush. Remove with damp sponges, or steam towels customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>Prematurely-aging or aging skin. Not for sensitized or skin with an impaired barrier.</td>
<td>Dispense tube contents onto face and massage with fingertips over entire face for 3 to 7 minutes (depending on skin condition). Avoid eye area. Remove with the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse, followed by Special Cleansing Gel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant + Exfoliant Accelerator 35</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>Prematurely-aging or aging skin. Not for sensitized or skin with an impaired barrier.</td>
<td>Mix 1 tube MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant with 1 pump (¼ teaspoon) of Exfoliant Accelerator 35. Massage with fingertips over entire face for 3 to 7 minutes (depending on skin condition). Avoid eye area. Remove with the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse, followed by Special Cleansing Gel.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exfoliant Accelerator 35</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>Prematurely-aging or aging skin. Not for sensitized or skin with an impaired barrier.</td>
<td>Dispense 2 to 3 pumps of Exfoliant Accelerator 35 and apply to face and neck, massaging gently over skin for 3 to 10 minutes (depending on skin condition). Avoid eye area. Remove with the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse, followed by Special Cleansing Gel. Monitor for stinging and remove promptly if necessary.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**contraindications for use:** Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.
skin condition
For prematurely-aging skin.

description
This low pH (3.2) concentrate in a Chamomile Extract base contains skin smoothing ingredients including Lactic Acid, peptides and enzymes from bacteria and Papaya, plus fermentation enzymes to boost exfoliation. **Exfoliant Accelerator 35** is a highly active concentrate that may be used undiluted on skin or added to Dermalogica chemical exfoliants to intensify and accelerate exfoliation activity.

bioactivity score 35

contraindications for use
If applying **Exfoliant Accelerator 35** undiluted on skin, use extreme caution. Do not leave client unattended.

This product is for professional use only and not intended for consumer retail or home use. Use only if trained by Dermalogica.

Do not use if skin is sensitive, sunburned, irritated or within 24 hours of waxing. Rinse off immediately if product causes discomfort. If you suspect your client could be sensitive or sensitized and may respond adversely to Exfoliant Accelerator 35 prior to treatment, patch test on a small area behind the ear or inner arm (inside elbow) to evaluate skin response and potential for irritant contact dermatitis.

Clients using Retin-A, Renova, Adapalene or any medically-prescribed exfoliating product must discontinue use at least two weeks before undergoing this treatment.

Clients who are taking Isotretinoin (sometimes marketed as Accutane), or have taken Isotretinoin within the past 6 months, should not receive any exfoliation treatments.

This product contains an alpha hydroxy acid (AHA) that may increase the skin’s sensitivity to the sun and particularly the possibility of sunburn. Advise client to use sunscreen and limit sun exposure for one week after treatment.

Slight tingling, mild itching or some temporary skin redness are normal reactions to a highly-active exfoliant. Use of this product by untrained, unlicensed persons may result in extreme skin irritation, skin lifting or injury.

professional application

1. Apply a thin layer of Colloidal Masque Base around the eyes, nasal folds and lip area to avoid contact with potentially fragile areas.

2. Dispense 2 to 3 pumps of **Exfoliant Accelerator 35** into hands and apply to the face, throat and décolleté using spreading movements to evenly distribute over skin.

3. Use continuous, light effleurage movements to massage **Exfoliant Accelerator 35** over the skin to dissipate any irritation or tingling.

4. For sensitive skin: leave on for 3 to 5 minutes. Do not use steam.
   For coarser skin: leave on for 7 to 10 minutes. Can be used under steam.

5. Assess the skin throughout the treatment, monitoring for excessive redness. Remove immediately if discomfort or irritation is severe.

6. Remove thoroughly with the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse and follows with Special Cleansing Gel.

7. Follow with prescribed Dermalogica Masque.
Mix Exfoliant Accelerator 35 with other Dermalogica professional exfoliants:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Measurement</th>
<th>Exfoliant Accelerator 35</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Skin Prep Scrub</td>
<td>We do not recommend using this product with Exfoliant Accelerator 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily Microfoliant®</td>
<td>½ teaspoon</td>
<td>1 pump (¼ teaspoon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Daily Resurfacer</td>
<td>We do not recommend using this product with Exfoliant Accelerator 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Enzymatic Base, Part A</td>
<td>We do not recommend using this product with Exfoliant Accelerator 35</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiVitamin Thermafoliant®</td>
<td>Approximately ½ tablespoon</td>
<td>1 pump (¼ teaspoon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skin Exfoliant System</td>
<td>1 scoop Enzymatic Base, Part A and ¾ teaspoon Acidic Activator, Part B</td>
<td>1 pump (¾ teaspoon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gentle Cream Exfoliant</td>
<td>Approximately ½ tablespoon</td>
<td>1 pump (¼ teaspoon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant</td>
<td>1 tube MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant</td>
<td>1 pump (¼ teaspoon)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exfoliant Accelerator 35</td>
<td>2-3 pumps</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Use all products as directed. If using MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant or Exfoliant Accelerator 35 alone, perform the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse, followed by Special Cleansing Gel.

Additional professional-use-only Exfoliants can be found within the AGE Smart® and MediBac Clearing® sections.

key ingredients

Lactic Acid: an alpha hydroxy acid that smooths and retexturizes.

Galactoarabian: a complex sugar molecule that stimulates skin’s natural exfoliation process while enhancing AHA-induced exfoliation.

Hexanoyl Dipeptide-3 Norleucine Acetate: an encapsulated peptide that competes with the two natural proteins that contribute to the desmosome connection between cells, therefore weakening the snap-like connection and facilitating cell sloughing.

Protease Enzyme / Aminopeptidase / Bacillus Ferment: a source of bacterial protease enzymes that helps loosen cell cohesion while stimulating digestion of Keratin protein in the epidermis.

Papaya Juice Enzymes: a rich source of Papain, a proteolytic enzyme that digests Keratin protein, helps slough off dead skin cells and improves skin smoothness.

Salix Alba (Willow) Bark: an anti-inflammatory that helps clear congestion.

Olea Europaea (Olive) Leaf: a water-soluble extract rich in antioxidant polyphenols that help fight free radical damage and control environmental aggressions.

benefits

Provides intense exfoliation, leaving skin smooth and optimally prepped for subsequent treatment products.

Accelerates the activity and exfoliation efficacy of select Dermalogica professional exfoliants.

Allows for customization of professional exfoliation treatments.

Helps stimulate cell renewal and cell turnover rates to help smooth skin while improving texture and tone.
Professional Masques can be used to intensify the results of your treatments, as they are instrumental in treating various skin conditions such as acne, prematurely-aging skin or sensitized skin. Dermalogica Masques are unlimited in their versatility, depending on the Botanical Mixer or Complex used underneath. Face Mapping® skin analysis will direct you towards selecting the right products to create the customized masque for your client’s condition. The unique Dermalogica concept of customized masques is based on the use of Dermalogica Complexes or Botanical Mixers applied under or mixed with a masque base for concentrated effects. The customization you can provide with Dermalogica professional Masques is unlimited, making them your treatment room’s greatest weapon!
skin condition
Dry, prematurely-aging and dehydrated skin, or for use over the eyes and lips.

description
A clear, botanically-active gel masque, rich in phytonutrients, that deeply moisturizes dehydrated skin conditions. Botanical humectants attract moisture and bind it to the skin, leaving it hydrated and supple.

colloidal masque base

professional application

1. Apply approximately one tablespoon to skin using Fan Masque Brush to cover the entire face and throat. Can be spread lightly over closed eyelids and lips.

2. Leave on for 10 minutes to activate, then remove with sponges and warm water or a steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

optional:

Can be used with galvanic current on positive polarity for increased product penetration for 4 to 7 minutes.

Apply prescribed Complex to skin before applying Colloidal Masque Base for an intense, condition-specific masque. Or, apply a thin layer of Colloidal Masque Base, followed by Contour Masque for a super hydrating, extra-firming masque.

Can be combined with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

key ingredients

Hyaluronic Acid: provides increased hydration and improved elasticity.

Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender), Malva Sylvestris (Mallow), Hedera Helix (Ivy) and Cucumis Sativus (Cucumber) Fruit: extracts that help promote skin hydration.

Retinyl Palmitate (Vitamin A): helps increase skin elasticity and helps reverse the signs of prematurely-induced photoaging.

Ascorbic Acid (Vitamin C): an antioxidant that stimulates collagen formation to help firm and strengthen skin.

benefits

Cools and hydrates skin.

Seals in the enhanced action of Complexes.

Helps minimize the appearance of environmental stress and damage while defending against future damage.
plankton masque base

skin condition
Skin with excess oil production or congestion.

description
A thick, clay-based masque that is rich in Marine Plankton and minerals that possess remarkable balancing and stabilizing properties. The mineral-based clays have a regulating and refining effect on skin as they normalize sebaceous secretions.

professional application
1. Apply approximately one tablespoon to skin using Fan Masque Brush to cover entire face and throat, avoiding eye area. Can also be used only on T-zone in combination with other Dermalogica Masques, if desired.
2. Leave on for 10 minutes, then remove with sponges and warm water or a steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

optional:
Apply prescribed Complex to skin before applying Plankton Masque Base for a powerful, customized masque. Can be combined with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

key ingredients
Bentonite and Kaolin: clays that help absorb excess oil, refine pores and clear congestion.

Fucus Vesiculosus (Bladderwrack) Seaweeds and Marine Plankton: a complex of alginates that are super rich in vitamins.

Citrus Grandis (Grapefruit) Peel: a natural astringent and cleanser.

Bisabolol: reduces sensitivity and inflammation.

benefits
Stimulates skin’s natural toxin elimination process.

Deep cleans and purifies follicles.

Clay formula removes dead skin cell debris and absorbs excess oil.
**skin condition**
Sensitized, mature, prematurely-aging skin in need of firming.

**description**
A loose powder masque rich in Calcium Sulfate and algae-derived Silica. Once mixed with water, it forms a smooth paste, which then sets and dries into a firm, rubbery sheet. Removal is achieved by peeling masque off the skin.

**contour masque**

**professional application**

1. Apply prescribed Dermalogica Complex to skin. For dry, dehydrated or aging skin, apply a thin layer of Colloidal Masque Base, MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque or Intensive Moisture Masque.

2. Place damp eye gauze and a damp layer of gauze over face and neck. Tent gauze around nose.

3. Mix ½ bag with cool, water to form a thick, smooth, spreadable paste.

4. Spread masque with a spatula over face and neck. Should be ¼ inch thick.

5. Let set for 20 minutes and gently peel off like a rubber sheet. Lift from the base of the neck or jaw line. Remove any residue with warm water and sponges or a steam towel.

**optional:**
Can be used for firming body treatments. Apply directly to area in need of firming and allow to set for 20 minutes, then lift off.

**key ingredients**

- **Diatomaceous Earth:** a unicellular algae that provides a source of Silica to form the firming matrix.

- **Calcium Sulfate:** a white powder that readily absorbs water and provides a hardening substrate for the masque.

- **Algin:** a form of alginic acid derived from brown seaweed that helps form a gelatinous texture.

**benefits**

- Firms and contours skin by reducing edema with cooling temperatures.

- Increases circulation to aid in penetration of prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer.
After cleansing, extractions are one of the most important segments of any professional treatment, and possibly the most technically difficult. To aid in the hygienic removal of comedones and congestion, Dermalogica’s professional extraction formulas are made from naturally anti-bacterial botanical extracts. They achieve the necessary softening of the skin and provide antiseptic post-care to minimize inflammation and breakouts.
skin condition
Congested areas of skin prone to comedones.

description
A clear, light fluid that provides a professional, thorough extraction by softening keratinized protein and impacted sebum in the follicles.

professional application

1. Pour a small amount of Scaling Fluid (approximately ¼ teaspoon) into a small dish and mix with a dry Fan Masque Brush to a foamy consistency (similar to whisked egg white) to eliminate any dripping upon application. Protect eyes with gauze.

   optional:
   One drop of Purifying Botanical Mixer can be added after fluid has been whipped to customize treatment.

2. Apply foam to areas of congestion with Fan Masque Brush.

3. Allow solution to activate and dissolve the impactions for 7 to 10 minutes under warm steam.

   optional:
   Scaling Fluid contains sodium salts and can be used with galvanic current on the negative polarity for 4 minutes. Scaling Fluid can be used as a cleaning medium with vacuum suction to facilitate comedone removal. One tablespoon may be used alone, or mix one scoop Enzymatic Base, Part A with a small amount (tablespoon) of Scaling Fluid for a deep-cleansing enzyme exfoliation prior to extractions.

4. Tissue off excess, perform extractions, then rinse with warm water customized with prescribed Dermalogica Botanical Mixer and sponges. Follow with Post Extraction Solution.

   optional:
   Direct High Frequency can be used on dry skin after extractions to provide antibacterial benefits.

key ingredients

Quillaja Saponaria: a naturally-foaming extract that gently removes impurities and excess oils.

Sodium Salts: alkaline by nature, they help soften keratinized protein while dilating the follicles. This ensures a professional desincrustation, without the drying and irritating effects of traditional alkaline sodas.

Nasturtium Officinale (Watercress), Arctium Lappa (Burdock) Root, Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) Fruit, Salvia Officinalis (Sage) Leaf and Hedera Helix (Ivy): a natural herbal base of extracts that provides a natural antiseptic and soothing performance.

benefits
Designed to ease extraction work and purify the most asphyxiated skin.

Ideal for use on both comedones and milia.
post extraction solution

**skin condition**
Areas of the skin where extractions have been performed.

**description**
A clear, liquid solution, which may have a slight natural yellow tint, that helps soothe inflamed, irritated skin while creating an antiseptic environment.

**professional application**

1. Complete the manual extraction portion of the skin treatment.
2. Apply 1 to 2 pumps of solution to dry cotton pad and apply to areas where extractions were performed.

**optional:**
Direct High Frequency can be utilized prior to Post Extraction Solution or after Post Extraction Solution on thoroughly dry skin.

**key ingredients**
- Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree) Oil encapsulated in Cyclodextrin: aids in soothing and purifying skin while reducing comedones.
- Salicylic Acid: stimulates natural exfoliation, helping to clear impacted follicles and minimize acne formation.
- Centipeda Cunninghamii (Sneezeweed): a plant extract; helps soothe inflamed, irritated skin.

**benefits**
- Medicates and purifies follicles.
- Speeds clearing of existing breakouts and prevents future breakouts.
- Reduces redness and inflammation.
- Good to use on post-waxed skin.
- Use prior to professional exfoliation to help remove excess sebum.

8 Fl. Oz. / 237 mL
Massage is one of the most ancient methods of healing. A hands-on manual technique can manipulate blood flow, stimulate sebaceous production, increase muscle tone, detoxify acid waste in the tissues and muscles, relax the nerves and assist in oxygenating the skin. The ancient cultures of China, Egypt, Greece, Rome and India utilized massage as a form of therapeutic medicine, delivering the same type of benefits being sought by clients today. Most professional skin therapists want to include some form of Touch Therapy or massage technique during the skin treatment. Traditionally, this has been in the form of a European technique, which utilizes five classical massage movements. Whether you offer Pressure Point Massage or Lymph Drainage as a part of your skin treatment, your massage can be about relaxation while encouraging detoxification and promoting skin health for the entire body. Your massage techniques can be customized and enhanced by Dermalogica Additives. Additives are blended essential oils in a vegetable oil base and, like the entire Dermalogica range, are free of all mineral oils and fragrance. They are completely pure, powerful and effective, and provide eight different options for customizing the massage step of your treatment. Dermalogica Additives can help relax the client, detoxify the skin and relieve allergy stress. Additives are the ideal essential oil blends for all aromatherapy massage and Lymph Drainage techniques, and can be used with Dermalogica Massage Cream.
skin condition
All skin conditions suited to European Massage.

description
This fragrance-free cream formula melts and liquefies on contact with the skin’s warmth. The ideal medium for facial massage, without mineral oils, ensures easy manipulations for the full treatment time without skin drag and is ideal for use with Dermalogica Additives.

professional application

1. Apply approximately 1/2 tablespoon (walnut-size) to the upper arms, shoulders, upper chest, throat and face.
2. Spread and proceed with the massage routine.
3. If more slip-and-glide is needed, simply add warm water to your hands and continue with massage.
4. Remove with warm water, a steam towel or sponges before the application of Dermalogica Complexes or Additives.

optional:
Press 6 to 10 drops of prescribed Additive into skin prior to use.

key ingredients
Safflower Oil: a rich source of essential fatty acids; aids in skin lubricity.
Malva Sylvestris (Mallow), Hedera Helix (Ivy), Cucumis Sativus (Cucumber) Fruit, Sambucus Nigra Flower and Arnica Montana Flower: extracts that help soothe and moisturize.

benefits
Non-comedogenic.
Long-lasting slip-and-glide without mineral oil.
Water-soluble for easy removal.
skin condition
Dry or prematurely-aging skin.

description
A concentrated blend of essential oils in a vegetable oil base that helps revive skin tissue and aids in oxygenation.

professional application
Additives must not be rubbed, but rather pressed onto skin.

1. Use 6 to 10 drops pressed onto skin. Always press lightly onto skin for maximum effect.

2. Apply Additive to skin for the Dermalogica Pressure Point Massage that is given prior to the main massage or as the primary massage.

optional:
For European massage, customize treatment by applying 6 to 10 drops to the skin prior to the use of Massage Cream.

contraindications
Do not use on pregnant women.

key ingredients
Aniba Rosaeodora (Rosewood) Wood: an oil that provides intense hydration.

Santalum Album (Sandalwood), Juniperus Virginiana, Citrus Aurantium Dulcis (Orange) and Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender): oils that soothe and increase moisture.

Corylus Avellana (Hazel) Seed, Persea Gratissima (Avocado) and Triticum Vulgare (Wheat) Germ: oils that create a base that works to nourish and heal skin without contributing excess oiliness.

benefits
Revitalizes mature and lackluster skin conditions.

Suitable for thinned skins to regenerate and gently stimulate the tissues.
clearing additive

skin condition
Skin with excess oil production and breakouts.

description
A concentrated blend of natural antiseptic essential oils for skin purification that helps detoxify, purify and decongest skin.

professional application
Additives must not be rubbed, but rather pressed onto skin.

1. Use 6 to 10 drops pressed onto skin. Always press lightly onto skin for maximum effect.

2. Apply Additive to skin for the Dermalogica Pressure Point Massage that is given prior to the main massage or as the primary massage.

optional:
For European massage, customize treatment by applying 6 to 10 drops to skin prior to the use of Massage Cream.

contraindications
Do not use on pregnant women.

key ingredients
Cananga Odorata Flower (Ylang-Ylang): a thoroughly cleansing oil.

Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender), Cymbopogon Schoenanthus (Lemongrass), Juniperus Virginiana (Juniper), Aniba Rosaeodora (Rosewood) Wood and Santalum Album (Sandalwood): oils that help clear congestion.

Corylus Avellana (Hazel) Seed, Persea Gratissima (Avocado) and Triticum Vulgare (Wheat) Germ: oils that create a base that works to nourish and heal skin without contributing excess oiliness.

benefits
Treats breakouts and oily skin conditions with purifying essential oils, stimulating blood flow.

Soothes and purifies.
**soothing additive**

**skin condition**
Sensitive and sensitized skin.

**description**
A concentrated blend of calming essential oils that helps soothe sensitive skin conditions and works to reduce redness and irritation.

**professional application**
Additives must not be rubbed, but rather pressed onto skin.

1. Use 6 to 10 drops pressed onto skin. Always press lightly onto skin for maximum effect.

2. Apply Additive to skin for the Dermalogica Pressure Point Massage that is given prior to the main massage or as the primary massage.

**optional:**
For European massage, customize treatment by applying 6 to 10 drops to skin prior to the use of Massage Cream.

**contraindications**
Do not use on pregnant women.

**key ingredients**
Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender), Cupressus Sempervirens (Cypress), Eucalyptus Globulus (Eucalyptus) Leaf and Santalum Album (Sandalwood): rich oils that help soothe skin.

Corylus Avellana (Hazel) Seed, Persea Gratissima (Avocado) and Triticum Vulgare (Wheat) Germ: oils that create a base that works to nourish and soothe skin without contributing excess oiliness.

**benefits**
Alleviates sinus tension and aids breathing.

Helps relieve skin sensitivity caused by hay fever, asthma, irritation, pollution, smoking and allergies.
Powerful and aromatic, Botanical Mixers increase the benefits of most Dermalogica products used throughout a professional treatment. Completely oil-free, and formulated in an oil-free botanical extract base, Botanical Mixers are comprised of a range of water-soluble hydroessentials and deliver strength comparable to the essential oils in the Dermalogica Additives. The beauty of Botanical Mixers is that they can be blended into almost any of the Dermalogica professional-use-only products to enhance performance, customize treatments to address specific skin concerns, or offer aromatherapeutic benefits. They are also great for clients who have adverse reactions to or prefer to be treated with oil-free products.
skin condition
Sensitive and sensitized skin.

description
Hydroessentials that help calm and soothe irritated, environmentally-sensitized and allergy-prone skin.

key ingredients
Santalum Album (Sandalwood), Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender) and Eucalyptus Globulus (Eucalyptus) Leaf: extracts that calm and soothe sensitized skin conditions.

benefits
Can be blended into most Dermalogica products to customize treatments, intensify benefits, address specific skin concerns and for aromatherapeutic benefits.

Completely water-soluble, making it easy to blend and remove from skin.

Ideal for skin conditions intolerant of oil-based massage formulations.

professional application

option 1
Use 6 to 10 drops directly on skin for an oil-free aromatherapy massage, Dermalogica Pressure Point Massage, Lymphatic Drainage Massage or in the Dr. Lucas Pulverizer™ for an aromatic infusion.

option 2
Mix 2 to 3 drops into prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser, Daily Microfoliant®, Barrier Repair, Colloidal Masque Base, Clinical Colloidal Oatmeal and/or prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer to intensify the soothing and calming effects. Or, use directly on skin for concentrated effects.

option 3
Mix into cleansing water to create aromatic water or to customize steam towels.
purifying botanical mixer

Skin condition
Skin with excess oil production or breakouts.

description
A decongesting and purifying hydroessential blend for congested and breakout-prone skin.

Benefits
- Helps purify, cleanse and soothe.
- Powerfully aromatic.
- Completely water-soluble, making it easy to blend and remove from skin.
- Ideal for skin conditions intolerant of oil-based massage formulations.

Key ingredients
- **Cananga Odorata (Ylang-Ylang) Flower**: helps soothe skin.
- **Melissa Officinalis (Balm Mint) Leaf**: a skin-soothing extract that cools and calms.
- **Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon Peel)**: an oil that helps purify skin.
- **Cymbopogon Schoenanthus (Lemongrass)**: a naturally fragrant oil; energizes and revives while toning.

Professional application

**Option 1**
Use 6 to 10 drops directly on skin for an oil-free aromatherapy massage, Dermalogica Pressure Point Massage, Lymphatic Drainage Massage or in the Dr. Lucas Pulverizer™ for an aromatic infusion.

**Option 2**
Mix 2 to 3 drops into prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser, Skin Exfoliant System, Plankton Masque Base, Sebum Clearing Masque, MediBac Clearing® Masque System, Colloidal Masque Base and/or prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer to intensify the purifying and detoxifying effects. Or, use directly on skin for concentrated effects.

**Option 3**
Mix into cleansing water to create aromatic water or to customize steam towels.

4 Fl. Oz. / 118 mL
skin condition
Dry or prematurely-aging skin.

description
Revitalizing and nourishing hydroessentials stimulate and hydrate dry, lackluster skin.

replenishing botanical mixer

professional application

1. Use 6 to 10 drops directly on skin for an oil-free aromatherapy massage, Dermalogica Pressure Point Massage, Lymphatic Drainage Massage or in the Dr. Lucas Pulverizer™ for an aromatic infusion.

2. Mix 2 to 3 drops into prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser, MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque, Daily Microfoliant® Colloidal Masque Base, Intensive Moisture Masque and/or prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer to intensify the hydrating and nourishing effects. Or, use directly on skin for concentrated effects.

3. Mix into cleansing water to create aromatic water or to customize steam towels.

key ingredients

Santalum Album (Sandalwood) Wood: an extract that leaves skin soothed, smoothed, healed and conditioned.

Syringa Vulgaris (Lilac) and Ocimum Basilicum (Basil): revitalize and calm skin while adding nourishment.

Citrus Aurantium Amara (Bitter Orange): adds natural fragrance.

benefits

Boosts hydrating power when blended with almost any Dermalogica product.

Completely water-soluble, making it easy to blend and remove from skin.

Ideal for skin conditions intolerant of oil-based massage formulations, as well as prematurely-aging skin conditions and clients with the signs of skin aging.
Wrinkles, altered pigmentation, loss of skin tone... we all associate these changes with skin aging. Age-related skin changes are the result of genetically-programmed changes (intrinsic factors) and environmental wear-and-tear on the skin (extrinsic factors). While both influence the skin’s structure and function, extrinsic factors cause more pronounced changes. Estimates state that 80-99% of what we see on our skin as adults is the result of exposure to daylight, which is referred to as photoaging. Manifestations of photoaging include an increase in wrinkle formation, a loss of tension and elasticity, degeneration of the vascular supply and skin thickness, a reduction in the water-binding properties of the skin, dilated capillaries (telangiectasis), hyperpigmentation and other skin discoloration.

While scientists attribute the majority of these structural changes to exposure to ultraviolet (UV) radiation, it has only been in recent years that they have come to understand the actual biochemical
triggers that instigate these changes. These are chemical reactions that occur within the skin and include:

- Generation of Reactive Oxygen Species (ROS), also known as free radicals.
- Activation of metalloproteinase enzymes (Matrix Metalloproteinases or MMPs) with a subsequent decline in collagen biosynthesis.
- Glycation leading to Advanced Glycation End-products (AGEs).

The treatment of skin aging used to rely on addressing the structural manifestations of photoaged skin, such as wrinkles and loss of elasticity. Today, we can more effectively treat this skin condition by addressing the actual biochemical reactions that trigger these structural changes. Obviously, understanding these specific biochemical reactions is key to treating the structural changes associated with skin aging. Let’s examine these structural changes that occur in the epidermis and dermis, as well as the biochemical reactions that trigger them.

**Biochemical Reactions that Cause Skin Aging**

**Generation of Reactive Oxygen Species (ROS)**

Reactive Oxygen Species include oxygen ions, free radicals and peroxides. ROS are generally very small molecules and are highly reactive due to the presence of unpaired electrons. They form as a natural by-product of the normal metabolism of oxygen. During times of environmental stress, ROS levels can increase dramatically, causing significant damage to cell structures. This is known as oxidative stress, which is the major cause of degenerative disorders including aging and disease. Studies have shown that UV-induced damage to the skin is in part caused by Reactive Oxygen Species. Lipid peroxidation also results from ROS damage to cell membranes, leading to premature aging, skin cancer and cell death.

**Activation of Matrix Metalloproteinases (MMPs)**

Matrix Metalloproteinases are enzymes that, when activated, control tissue degradation in the dermis. MMPs include collagenase that specifically decomposes particular collagens or other proteins in the extracellular matrix of the dermis. Collagenase is really a group of enzymes that are responsible for breaking down the different types of collagen and elastin.
For example, collagenase-1, or MMP-1, acts on collagens I, II, III, VII and X. MMP-1 cleaves the triple helix strand of collagen into smaller fragments that spontaneously denature into gelatinous peptides that are further degraded by other MMPs. This activity makes the MMPs critical for the remodeling of connective tissue, which is a critical part of aging and wound-healing. The formation of MMPs may be stimulated by internal growth factors and inflammatory modulators, as well as exposure to UV radiation. Within hours of UV exposure, the MMP genes are activated, resulting in the biosynthesis of collagenase and other MMPs. Because collagenase degrades existing collagen and inhibits the formation of new collagen, long-term elevation results in disorganization and clumping of skin cells – key characteristics of photoaged skin.

**Advanced Glycation End-products (AGEs)**

How does photoaging lead to cross-linking of collagen and elastin in our skin? Exciting new research has contributed to our understanding of this critical step in aging. We now know that collagen and elastin proteins are highly susceptible to an internal chemical reaction within the body called glycation. This is a non-enzyme mediated reaction that takes place between free amino groups in proteins and a sugar such as glucose. The same glucose that provides energy for our cells can react with proteins (such as collagen), resulting in the formation of Advanced Glycation End-products and Reactive Oxygen Species; these contribute to cross-linking of protein fibers, the loss of elasticity and changes in the dermis associated with the aging process. When AGEs form in the skin, they activate a receptor site and form a complex known as Receptor-AGE (R-AGE) that signals cellular processes related to inflammation and subsequent disease. Why is this so important? Because we now know that inflammation is the catalyst critical to the aging process and many diseases. For example, diabetics have characteristically high levels of sugar in their blood and suffer from numerous health issues (including cataracts, atherosclerosis, etc.) which emanate from the formation of AGEs in the body. Hence, diabetes is considered a disease of accelerated aging due to the inflammation that arises from the formation of AGEs. This is not restricted to diabetes; muscle weakness, heart disease and many diseases of the brain are associated with glycation. Scientists now believe that reducing glycation is a means of slowing the aging process and disease formation.

**What Can Be Done to Help Control the Biochemical Reactions That Lead to Skin Aging?**

1. **Antioxidants to Fight Reactive Oxygen Species (ROS – Free Radical) Damage**

   Normally, the body can handle free radicals with the use of antioxidants. Antioxidants include vitamins (such as Ascorbic Acid and Tocopherol), enzymes (such as Superoxide Dismutase, Catalase and Peroxidase) and even proteins that can be found naturally in the body or ingested as part of our diet. If, however, antioxidants are in short supply, or if the free radical damage is excessive, damage to the cells and tissue will occur. In skin, this free radical damage manifests itself in the form of superficial lines, wrinkles, hyperpigmentation, rashes and inflammation. On a subcellular level, this may cause cross-linking of collagen and elastin, damage to DNA and tissue degradation. Unfortunately, as we age, free radical damage accumulates. While ingesting antioxidants can effectively scavenge ROS, skin is often the last to get its ration of antioxidants.
That is when topically-applied cosmetic products come into play. Scientists have been studying an entire arsenal of plant antioxidants that, when applied topically, can help us fight free radicals and protect our skin. Studies have shown that topical application of antioxidants diminishes the severity of UVA-induced dermatoses and raises the amount of UVA radiation required to evoke immediate pigment darkening to skin. Recent studies from the University of Illinois have demonstrated how Ascorbic Acid (Vitamin C) and Tocopherol (Vitamin E) are critical for use with sunscreens to protect skin from ROS. Because oxidative stress plays a key role in the biological events leading to skin aging, the use of topically-applied antioxidants helps prevent future damage by trapping ROS and quenching them before they damage our cells.

2. Inhibit MMPs
Natural MMP inhibitors exist in skin, but as expected, they decline with age. MMPs may be inhibited by topical agents, such as retinoids. Because of this, retinoids, including Retinol (Vitamin A) and its derivatives, are recommended for reversing the signs of photoaging and preventing the formation of MMPs. Bioflavonoids, including the proanthocyanidins from Grape Seed Extract, the polyphenols from Green and White teas and Soy phytoestrogens, are also excellent for controlling MMP activity. For best results, one should use a product that controls MMPs while stimulating collagen, elastin and Hyaluronic Acid biosynthesis; including synthetic peptides Retinol (Vitamin A) and its derivatives, Asorbic Acid (Vitamin C) and its derivatives and Soy and Yeast extracts.

3. Create “Sugar Traps” or Cross-Link Breakers to Control the Formation of AGEs
The formation of AGEs in the body occurs spontaneously when sugar molecules come in contact with proteins. This glycation reaction occurs without any intervention of enzymes. By the same token, our body does not possess enzymes that can reverse the reaction, removing AGES. Controlling formation of AGES is a relatively new field of research; apparently the best means of controlling AGES is to interfere with their formation. There are some ingredients that have been shown to inhibit glycation from occurring, but exactly how all of these agents work is not understood just yet. These ingredients include Glucosamine, Soy proteins, the Soy active known as Genestein and specific peptide molecules. Studies have shown that a peptide molecule known as Arginine/ Lysine polypeptide can bind to sugar, preventing it from reacting with proteins and triggering cross-linking of collagen. This peptide molecule acts as a sugar trap, binding to the sugar in the body, making it unable to react with proteins.

The International Dermal Institute has researched the changes that occur during skin aging and what we can realistically do for this pre-existing condition. Instead of focusing on treating just the manifestations of skin aging (wrinkles, hyperpigmentation, loss of elasticity, etc.), we focused our efforts on understanding how we might impact the biochemical reactions that manifest these changes to stop them before they start. This research has resulted in the development of AGE Smart®, a system of retail and professional products designed to specifically treat and control the structural manifestations associated with skin aging and the biological triggers that lead to these changes, as well as treat the visible signs of skin aging so skin is smoother, firmer and healthier. AGE Smart® consists of products that work to fight the biochemical triggers that lead to skin aging.

1. Sugar and collagen (protein) meet and react within the body and create AGEs, which ultimately contribute to the cross-linking of collagen.
2. ARG-LYS Polypeptide acts as a sugar trap, binding sugar to itself to prevent it from reacting with collagen, therefore preventing the formation of AGEs and inhibiting cross-linking of collagen.
skin resurfacing cleanser

skin condition
Mature or prematurely-aging skin.

description
A dual-action exfoliating cleanser containing Lactic Acid that smooths, retexturizes and delivers ultra-clean skin. Use of this cleanser prepares skin for maximum penetration of AGE Smart® active ingredients.

top products to prescribe
- Antioxidant HydraMist
- MAP-15 Regenerator®
- MultiVitamin Power Firm

application
Following the removal of PreCleanse, lightly lather in hands and apply to damp face and throat morning and evening, massaging with light, upward strokes for at least 30 seconds, avoiding the eye area. Reduce to one use per day if any sensitivity develops. Follow with Antioxidant HydraMist and Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30 when used in the morning.

professional application

1. Perform the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse.

   note:
   Upon beginning second cleanse with Skin Resurfacing Cleanser, steam may be used to facilitate the cleansing process by further softening the skin.

2. Lather Skin Resurfacing Cleanser and apply with flowing effleurage, spreading movement over the entire face, throat and upper décolleté. Ensure slip-and-glide by combining with water customized with Replenishing Botanical Mixer.

3. Damp sponges, steam towels or The Sponge Cloth customized with Replenishing Botanical Mixer should be used to remove all traces of cleanser.

contraindications for use
Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne medications, Vitamin A or exfoliation products. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been waxed.

key ingredients
Lactic Acid: an alpha hydroxy acid that smooths and retexturizes.

Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E): a rich antioxidant vitamin that improves skin smoothness and softness.

Rose Flower Oil: soothes; helps calm skin sensitivity.

benefits / top retailing points
Skin feels super-smooth after just one use.

Convenient two-in-one product thoroughly cleanses and exfoliates skin in one easy step.

Retexturizes skin suffering from visible signs of aging by accelerating cell turnover.

Fortifies skin’s natural moisture barrier.

Alpha hydroxy acid preps skin for maximum penetration of active ingredients. Also helps hydrate and brighten.
antioxidant hydramist

**skin condition**
Mature or prematurely-aging skin.

**description**
A refreshing antioxidant shield with flash-firming properties to improve skin texture, fight damaging free radicals and intensely hydrate alipoid, dehydrated skin.

**top products to prescribe**
- Skin Resurfacing Cleanser
- Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30
- Power Rich™

**application**
After cleansing, spritz directly onto face and neck, avoiding the eyes. Also ideal as a refreshing spritz over make-up throughout the day.

**professional application**

1. Perform the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse, followed by Skin Resurfacing Cleanser.

2. Spritz Antioxidant HydraMist onto the face, throat and upper chest evenly in an arc-like motion. Ensure the eyes are closed.

3. Gently press excess product into skin. Skin should remain damp following application, allowing even absorption of AGE Smart® products.

**optional:**
Dampen gauze with Antioxidant HydraMist, then cover face and neck, tenting over nose and mouth area. Apply Contour Masque with a spatula all over face and neck and even over the eye area for a soothing / firming eye treatment.

**key ingredients**

**Arginine/Lysine Polypeptide:** a peptide that acts as a sugar trap, binding sugars in the body to itself to prevent the formation of AGEs.

**Magnesium Ascorbyl Phosphate:** a non-acidic, stable form of Vitamin C that stimulates collagen formation, provides antioxidant protection and inhibits MMPs that contribute to collagen breakdown.

**Palmitoyl Tripeptide-5:** stimulates collagen synthesis, helps firm skin and overrides the effects of MMPs. Activates Tissue Growth Factor (TGF), a peptide that is required in its active state for collagen production to occur.

**Bambusa (Bamboo) Vulgaris and Pisum Sativum (Pea):** help stimulate Hyaluronic Acid formation for increased hydration and elasticity.

**Glucosamine:** controls the formation of AGEs, stimulates formation of Hyaluronic Acid and collagen and helps control age-related hyperpigmentation.

**Camellia Sinensis (White Tea) Leaf, Dipotassium Glycyrrhizate (Licorice) and Beta-Glucan:** help calm and protect skin from damaging ROS while inhibiting collagen-degrading MMPs and the formation of AGEs.

**benefits / top retailing points**

- Provides a refreshing mist that can be spritzed on face throughout the day.
- Creates an active antioxidant shield to fight damaging ROS.
- Creates instant firming action to lift and tighten the skin.
- Helps prevent the signs of aging caused by AGEs.
- Hydrates skin to reduce fine lines associated with dryness.
**multivitamin thermafoliant®**

**application**
After cleansing, apply to damp skin in circular motions for 1 to 2 minutes, avoiding the eye area. A more intense result can be achieved by using directly on dry skin. Rinse thoroughly with warm water. Follow with Antioxidant HydraMist and Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30. Use two to three times per week.

**professional application**

1. Apply to damp skin and massage in light, circular motions for 1-2 minutes

   **option 1:** Apply to dry skin and massage in light circular motions and activate with warm water for 2 minutes.

   **option 2:** Apply to dry skin and massage in light, circular motions. Activate with 1 pump of Exfoliant Accelerator 35 by applying Exfoliant Accelerator 35 directly into your hands, then massaging over skin. Dip fingertips into warm water, if necessary, to create a creamy thermal skin polisher. Massage over skin for 3 minutes. Rinse off thoroughly with sponges and tepid water, or a steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

**contraindications for use**
Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications, Vitamin A or exfoliation products. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

**key ingredients**

**Magnesium Oxide, Silica and Sodium Bicarbonate:** a fine mineral powder blend that polishes away dead skin cells to help minimize fine lines and improve the overall texture of skin. Removes excess cells that impede penetration of active ingredients.

**Lactic Acid and Salicylic Acid:** alpha and beta hydroxy acids that stimulate exfoliation of cells, leaving a smoother skin surface.

**Retinol (Vitamin A), Tocopherol (Vitamin E) and Tetrahexyldecyl Ascorbate (Vitamin C):** pure Vitamin A (stable in this anhydrous formula) helps reverse the signs of aging by normalizing cells and stimulating new collagen formation while gently exfoliating. Vitamin E helps smooth skin while a stable form of Vitamin C stimulates skin strengthening collagen.

**Opuntia Ficus Indica (Prickly Pear Cactus) Flower:** boosts activity of skin’s natural desquamation enzymes that are responsible for breaking desmosomal cell attachments.

**Camellia Sinensis (White Tea) Leaf:** polyphenols protect skin from ROS while inhibiting collagen-degrading MMPs and the formation of AGEs.

**benefits / top retailing points**
Gently polishes off dulling skin cells to reveal smoother, fresher skin immediately.

Thermal technology activates upon contact with water to drive beneficial ingredients further into skin.

Provides antioxidant protection while suppressing the formation of AGEs.

Inhibits collagen-degrading MMPs while conditioning skin.

Skin looks and feels dramatically improved and smoother.
**skin condition**
Mature or prematurely-aging skin.

**description**
A powerful masque of concentrated antioxidant vitamins to help skin recover from damage while enhancing barrier properties and promoting healthy tissue regeneration.

**top products to prescribe**
- Skin Resurfacing Cleanser
- MultiVitamin Power Concentrate
- Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30

---

**multivitamin power recovery® masque**

**application**
Apply generously to cleansed face and throat, avoiding the eye area. After 7 to 10 minutes, gently yet thoroughly rinse with warm water. Apply once per week or whenever the skin requires a soothing remedy. Follow with Antioxidant HydraMist or prescribed Dermalogica Toner, and Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30 or prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer.

**professional application**

1. Press 6 to 10 drops of AGE Smart® Complex onto skin.
2. Using Fan Masque Brush, apply a thin, even layer of MultiVitamin Power Recovery Masque to face, neck and eye area.
3. Cover face and neck with gauze that has been dampened with Antioxidant HydraMist, tenting over the nose and mouth area.
4. Apply Contour Masque with a spatula all over face and neck, even over the eye area, for a soothing / firming eye and lip treatment. Leave the nostrils and mouth free, allowing client to breathe comfortably. Allow to set for 20 minutes. Remove with damp sponges, or steam towels customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

**optional:**
To simplify, apply AGE Smart® Complex followed by MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque. Remove after 10 minutes.

**key ingredients**
Retinyl Palmitate (Vitamin A), Ascorbyl Palmitate (Vitamin C), Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E), Linoleic Acid (Vitamin F) and Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B5): help repair and restore damaged skin.

Avena Sativa (Oat) Kernel: acts as an anti-inflammatory while moisturizing, soothing and calming.

Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B5): aids in skin repair and hydration.

Algae Extract: nutrient rich; helps restore moisture balance while softening skin.

Glycyrrhiza Glabra (Licorice) Root Extract, Symphytum Officinale (Comfrey) Rhizome / Root Extract and Arctium Majus (Burdock) Root Extract: help soothe and calm skin while decreasing sensitivity.

**benefits / top retailing points**
A great restorative masque to help boost skin hydration and suppleness after exposing skin to stress.

Increases elasticity and aids in collagen synthesis, restoring suppleness.

Antioxidant vitamins help repair daily damage caused by ROS.

Botanicals help soothe and calm stressed skin.
MAP-15 regenerator®

application
To use as a spot treatment, dispense a small amount onto fingertip and press against skin while blending where signs of aging are prominent, such as the eyes and mouth areas. Boost your prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer for all-over brightening and firming by mixing a pea-sized amount into moisturizer prior to application.

key ingredients
Magnesium Ascorbyl Phosphate: a non-acidic, stable form of Vitamin C that stimulates collagen formation, provides antioxidant protection and inhibits MMPs that contribute to collagen breakdown.
Camellia Sinensis (White Tea) Leaf: rich in polyphenols; protects against free radical damage (ROS), fights the formation of AGEs and inhibits MMPs.
Hyaluronic Acid: provides increased hydration and improved elasticity.
Glucosamine: controls the formation of AGEs, stimulates formation of Hyaluronic Acid and collagen and helps control age-related hyperpigmentation.
Yeast Extract: helps stimulate wound healing, collagen formation and increases oxygen utilization in skin.

benefits / top retailing points
Stimulates collagen production to firm skin and brighten skin tone.
Helps prevent the signs of aging caused by AGEs.
Concentrated antioxidants neutralize ROS.
Silky emulsion blends gently into skin for efficient application.

skin condition
Mature or prematurely-aging skin.

description
A revolutionary powder-to-emulsion treatment that delivers the highest concentration of Magnesium Ascorbyl Phosphate (MAP) directly into the skin, dramatically improving skin firmness and clarity.

top products to prescribe
• Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30
• Renewal Lip Complex
• MultiVitamin Power Firm

0.3 Oz. / 8 g
### multivitamin power concentrate

#### skin condition
Mature or prematurely-aging skin.

#### description
This formulation of pure, concentrated vitamins A, C and E helps reverse the signs of premature aging while defending against future free radical damage.

#### top products to prescribe
- MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque
- Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30
- MultiVitamin Power Firm

#### application
Twist open or snip the capsule end with scissors and squeeze onto fingertips. Gently massage over cleansed face, throat and eyes, avoiding eyelids. Use once or twice daily. Follow with [Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30](#) or prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer.

#### contraindications
FOR EXTERNAL USE ONLY. This product contains Vitamin A. Consult a physician prior to use on pregnant women.

#### key ingredients
- **Retinyl Palmitate (Vitamin A):** helps reverse the signs of premature aging while stimulating collagen and elastin synthesis to increase elasticity, strengthen and firm skin.
- **Ascorbic Acid (Vitamin C):** an antioxidant that stimulates collagen formation to help firm and strengthen skin.
- **Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E):** a rich antioxidant vitamin that improves skin smoothness and softness.
- **Citrus Grandis (Grapefruit) Peel, Citrus Aurantifolia (Lime), Citrus Aurantium Dulcis (Orange) Peel and Citrus Nobilis (Mandarin Orange) Peel:** help soothe and calm skin.

#### benefits / top retailing points
Delivers a pure, concentrated dose of antioxidant vitamins that help defend against ROS while Retinyl Palmitate (Vitamin A) helps restore elasticity, firmness and promotes healthy tissue regeneration.

Increases moisture content and stimulates collagen synthesis, helping to reduce signs of aging and environmental stress.

Soothing botanical extracts help calm and restore skin.

Individually sealed capsules ensure product freshness.
overnight repair serum

description
Maximize nighttime skin repair to help minimize fine lines and increase luminosity. Press directly into skin or blend into your moisturizer for dramatic age-fighting benefits: our supercharged peptide serum helps stimulate collagen production to help firm and renew resilience while Argan and Rose oils revitalize lackluster skin and smooth away fine lines.

top products to prescribe
• Skin Resurfacing Cleanser
• MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque
• Power Rich™

application
After cleansing, smooth 4 to 6 drops into skin or blend with your nighttime treatment cream for dramatic age-fighting benefits and a refreshed appearance.

key ingredients
Argan Oil: rapidly penetrates skin without leaving a greasy feel. Excellent source of antioxidants and flavonoids that inhibit MMP enzymes from degrading collagen and elastin. Provides an enriched source of fatty acids, plant sterols, Vitamin E and Ferulic Acid to protect skin while reinforcing barrier lipid layer. Dermalogica uses a source of Argan that is supported by a reforestation program and contributes to local fair trade.

Helianthus Annuus (Sunflower Seed) Oil: An excellent source of ceramides, a critical component of the barrier lipid layer.

Carrot Seed Oil: A nourishing, antioxidant-rich oil that helps firm and rejuvenate skin while improving elasticity. Excellent for dry skin, eczema and dermatitis.

Jasmine Oil: A highly-fragrant essential oil with skin softening properties that helps condition dry, alipoid skin. A rich source of fragrant Jasmine esters that provide a calming effect to the psyche while soothing distressed skin.

Rosa Moschata Seed Oil (Rosehip Seed Oil) and Rose Oil: Antioxidant rich oils; an excellent source of Vitamin C and essential fatty acids to reinforce the barrier lipid layer, while protecting skin and enhancing luminosity. Contains Retinoic Acid, the active form of Vitamin A, that improves appearance of aging skin.

Alaria Esculenta: A brown edible seaweed harvested in the British Isles that is a rich source of essential fatty acids and plant sterols to help reinforce the skin’s barrier lipid layer. Contains powerful antioxidants and vitamins A, B, C and E to nourish skin tissues while stimulating collagen and Hyaluronic Acid formation.

Rosmarinus (Rosemary) Leaf Extract, Murraya (Curry) Leaf Oil, Cinnamomum (Cinnamon) Leaf Oil and Sesamum (Sesame) oils: Provide antimicrobial (preservative) properties to the serum.

benefits / top retailing points
Synchronizes with nighttime circadian rhythms to enhance skin nourishment, recovery, cell renewal and hydration levels.

Serum function delivers a quicker, more effective penetration of actives to address skin care issues.

Increases dermal strength.

Boosts skin luminosity while you sleep.
skin condition
Mature or prematurely-aging skin.

description
Encourage firmness, elasticity and hydration while helping to defend against the primary triggers of skin aging with this medium-weight, emollient daily moisturizer with SPF30.

top products to prescribe
• Skin Resurfacing Cleanser
• MAP-15 Regenerator®
• Super Rich Repair

application
After cleansing and toning, apply a generous amount to face and neck, preferably 30 minutes prior to sun exposure.

professional application
Following the application of Antioxidant HydraMist, MAP-15 Regenerator®, and/or MultiVitamin Power Concentrate, apply evenly to the face, throat and neck and blend with fingertips to complete professional treatment.

optional:
Super Rich Repair or Skin Hydrating Booster may be layered underneath if additional moisture is required.

key ingredients
Arginine / Lysine Polypeptide: a peptide that acts as a sugar trap, binding sugars in the body to itself to prevent the formation of AGEs.

Palmitoyl Tripeptide-5: stimulates collagen synthesis, helps firm skin and overrides the effects of MMPs. Activates Tissue Growth Factor (TGF), a peptide that is required in its active state for collagen production to occur.

Glucosamine: controls the formation of AGEs, stimulates formation of Hyaluronic Acid and collagen and helps control age-related hyperpigmentation.

Yeast Extract: helps stimulate wound healing, collagen formation and increases oxygen utilization in skin.

Oenothera Biennis (Evening Primrose): oil that conditions skin, restoring softness and suppleness.

Colloidal Oatmeal and Chrysanthemum Parthenium (Feverfew): help calm irritated skin.

Camellia Sinensis (White Tea) Leaf: rich in polyphenols; protects against free radical damage (ROS), fights the formation of AGEs and inhibits MMPs.

benefits / top retailing points
Enhances the skin’s natural ability to fight skin-aging ROS.

Helps prevent the signs of aging caused by AGEs.

Regulates the formation of collagen-degrading MMPs brought on by UV rays.

Provides long-lasting hydration and reinforces skin’s natural moisture barrier.

Provides critical protection from daylight exposure, yet blends smoothly into skin to create a perfected finish.
skin condition
Chronically dry, mature or prematurely-aging skin.

description
A super-concentrated, heavy-weight cream that combats chronically dry, dehydrated and prematurely-aging skin conditions while it repairs and protects. As the richest Dermalogica Moisturizer, it soothes, hydrates and replenishes even the thirstiest skin while acting as a protective salve to fight extreme cold and dry environmental conditions.

top products to prescribe
• Skin Resurfacing Cleanser
• MAP-15 Regenerator®
• MultiVitamin Power Firm

application
Apply to face and neck with light, upward strokes. Wait for cream to absorb before applying additional products. Use once or twice daily.

professional application

1. Following the application of Antioxidant HydraMist, apply Super Rich Repair evenly to the face, throat and neck and blend with fingertips to complete professional treatment.

optional:
Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30 can be layered over Super Rich Repair if additional moisture and SPF are required.

key ingredients
Arginine/Lysine Polypeptide: a peptide that acts as a sugar trap, binding sugars in the body to itself to prevent the formation of AGEs.

Oenothera Biennis (Evening Primrose), Borago Officinalis (Borage) Seed, Simmondsia Chinensis (Jojoba) Seed, Butyrospermum Parkii (Shea Butter), Coconut and Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E): help reduce trans-epidermal water loss and prohibit potentially-irritating environmental pollutants from entering the skin.

Madecassoside: inhibits inflammatory mediators while treating inflammation.

Palmitoyl Tripeptide-5: stimulates collagen synthesis, helps firm skin and overrides the effects of MMPs. Activates Tissue Growth Factor (TGF), a peptide that is required in its active state for collagen production to occur.

Genestein: an active Soy isoflavonoid that scavenges free radicals while stimulating collagen and Hyaluronic Acid production.

Colloidal Oatmeal, Zinc Oxide and Avena Sativa (Oat) Kernel: soothing; provides anti-itch relief to chronically dry skin.

benefits / top retailing points
Stimulates collagen synthesis and Hyaluronic Acid production to help repair prematurely-aging skin.

Smoothes fine dryness lines and helps restore elasticity.

Replenishes barrier lipids while moisturizing skin.

Soothes and insulates skin from extreme environmental elements while fighting inflammation.
**power rich™**

**skin condition**
Mature or prematurely-aging skin.

**description**
Help reverse the signs of skin aging and photodamage with this concentrated treatment, applied directly to areas of concern. The three-phase formula helps smooth away fine lines, increase elasticity and maintain moisture balance.

- Helps firm and increase skin resilience with bio-stimulating botanicals that help trigger collagen production.
- Helps smooth away fine lines with non-irritating exfoliation agents.
- Experience a smoother, refreshed appearance as peptides and skin-nourishing vitamins help reverse signs of skin aging.

**top products to prescribe**
- Antioxidant HydraMist
- MAP-15 Regenerator®
- Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30

**application**
Smooth over cleansed skin morning and night. Concentrate on areas with signs of visible aging to restore resilience and strength. During the day, apply and allow to absorb for 1 minute, then follow with Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30.

**key ingredients**

- **Palmitoyl Pentapeptide-4**: a synthetic protein fragment that stimulates collagen synthesis in the skin and the formation of skin glycosaminoglycans (i.e., Hyaluronic Acid).
- **Glucosamine HCl**: controls the formation of AGEs, stimulates formation of Hyaluronic Acid and collagen, and helps control age-related hyperpigmentation while stimulating exfoliation.
- **Corallina Officinalis (Red Seaweed)**: helps firm skin, reducing the appearance of fine lines.
- **Yeast Extract**: helps stimulate wound healing, collagen formation and increases oxygen utilization in skin.
- **Oryza Sativa (Rice) Bran**: extract derived from the outer husk of the rice kernel. Rich in Phytic Acid to aid in softening and exfoliating.

**benefits / top retailing points**
Three formulas in one maximum intensity treatment cream to address the signs of skin aging.

**Phase 1**: Biostimulating Botanicals
Power Rich™ contains an active blend of biostimulating botanicals that treat the loss of strength, elasticity and moisture in skin tissues. A seaweed concentrate that is blended in an herbal base of skin-firming Wheat Protein Extract, skin smoothing Kukui Nut and Apricot Kernel Oil, with soothing extracts of Licorice, Bisabolol, and Allantoin.

**Phase 2**: Acid-Free Smoothing Agents
Our Power Rich™ acid-free smoothing agents use state-of-the-art technology that enhances cell renewal and promotes natural exfoliation without any irritation or flaking. Rather than using traditional hydroxy acids, which must be formulated into a highly acidic base for optimum performance, our effective combination of Algae, Yeast, Glycosamine and Urea helps to accelerate cell renewal without impacting the skin’s natural pH balance.

**Phase 3**: Skin Regenerators
Power Rich™ contains high-tech cosmeceuticals and ingredients including antioxidant Vitamins A, C, E, and B5, advanced skin firmers such as Corallina Officinalis and Palmitoyl Pentapeptide-4, an advanced ingredient that stimulates collagen synthesis.
skin condition
Mature or prematurely-aging skin.

description
Combat visible lines around the eye area with this powerful firming complex of skin-rebuilding antioxidant vitamins and protective Silicones and Red Seaweed Extract.

top products to prescribe
• Skin Resurfacing Cleanser
• MAP-15 Regenerator®
• Super Rich Repair

application
Smooth around eyes, concentrating on areas of visible aging.

professional application

1. Following the application of Antioxidant HydraMist, apply MultiVitamin Power Firm around the eye area, using the ring finger.

optional:
For optimum results, press and blend MAP-15 Regenerator® against eye area prior to applying MultiVitamin Power Firm.

key ingredients
Retinyl Palmitate (Vitamin A), Ascorbic Acid (Vitamin C) and Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E): accelerate skin’s natural repair process, strengthen elasticity and improve smoothness while defending against ROS.

Corallina Officinalis (Red Seaweed): helps firm skin, reducing the appearance of fine lines.

Silicones: melt gently into skin to help diminish fine lines and smooth skin texture.

Camellia Sinensis (Green Tea) Leaf: helps soothe irritation.

benefits / top retailing points
Helps repair the signs of mature or premature aging with an infusion of multivitamins.

Increases skin elasticity and firmness by stimulating collagen synthesis and reinforcing cell to cell linkages.

Scavenges dangerous free radicals to help protect skin from environmental stress.

Protects against moisture loss to minimize fine lines associated with dehydration.

2.5 Fl. Oz. / 75 mL
0.5 Fl. Oz. / 15 mL
Skin Condition
Mature or prematurely-aging skin.

Description
Reverse multiple signs of aging with this breakthrough treatment for the delicate eye area. Retinol combines with key AGE Smart® ingredients to provide a synergistic dose of bioactives specifically formulated to address wrinkles and crow’s feet plus puffiness, dark circles due to hyperpigmentation and skin sensitivity due to dehydration.

Top Products to Prescribe
- Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30
- Renewal Lip Complex
- Power Rich™

Application
Start using alternate nights, for the first two weeks. As skin responds and increases tolerance, build up to using nightly. After cleansing, smooth and pat around the eye area working from the outer corner, inward. Use at night only.

Contraindications for Use
Due to the cell renewal effects of Retinol, avoid using any other exfoliating skin products around the eye area. Discontinue use 3 to 5 days prior and post any brow waxing treatments. This product contains Vitamin A. Consult a physician prior to use on pregnant women.

Key Ingredients
Retinol (0.1%): helps minimize lines around delicate eye area; helps reverse photoaging and chronological aging of skin tissues.

ARG-LYS Polypeptide, Soy and White Tea: AGE Smart® active ingredient complex that prevents AGEs, inhibits MMP activity and quenches ROS (free radicals).

Sodium Ascorbyl Phosphate: stabilized Vitamin C derivative and antioxidant that scavenges free radicals and neutralizes ROS generated as a result of UV exposure; stimulates collagen biosynthesis.

UGL Complex (Glucosamine HCl, Urea, Yeast Extract and Algae Extract): exfoliates and smooths skin surface, firms tissue reducing appearance of photoaged skin. Helps establish a better barrier to maintain hydrated tissues (stimulates involucrin that binds ceramides).

Fraxinus Excelsior Bark Extract: fights bags and under eye dark circles while strengthening blood capillaries and increasing blood microcirculation. Reinforces structural support tissue to maintain skin firmness. Contains Esculin and Fraxin, two components that decrease permeability of capillaries and provide antioxidant benefits, to prevent breakdown of hemoglobin (dark color under eye area).

Caffeine: helps address redness and puffiness by constricting capillaries.

Niacinamide: stimulates collagen synthesis while reinforcing barrier function of epidermis. Helps strengthen blood vessels to avoid leakage of fluid.

Benefits / Top Retailing Points
Targets multiple eye area concerns, primarily wrinkles and crow’s feet plus puffiness, dark circles due to hyperpigmentation and skin sensitivity due to dehydration.

Clinically proven to reverse the signs of aging; combines with peptides and other actives to repair and regenerate delicate eye area skin.

UGL Complex retexturizes skin like an Alpha Hydroxy Acid but at a non-irritating pH, which is critical for delicate eye area tissue.

Helps reduce puffiness due to fluid retention in the tissues while providing surface tightening to the skin.

Helps reduce dark circles by preventing the breakdown of iron-containing substances that contribute to dark coloration.

Intensely hydrates tissues to control skin sensitivity due to dehydration.
**renewal lip complex**

**skin condition**
All skin conditions, especially mature or prematurely-aging skin.

**description**
A daily lip treatment that restores delicate tissue, minimizes contour lines and helps prevent the signs of aging.

**top products to prescribe**
- MAP-15 Regenerator®
- Antioxidant HydraMist
- Super Rich Repair

**application**
Apply to lips at least two times a day for lip health maintenance, or more frequently in periods of dryness or environmental exposure.

**key ingredients**
- **Arginine / Lysine Polypeptide**: a peptide that acts as a sugar trap, binding sugars in the body to itself to prevent the formation of AGEs.
- **Palmitoyl Oligopeptide**: a peptide molecule that conditions skin and stimulates collagen formation to minimize fine lines.
- **Theobroma Cacao (Cocoa) Seed Butter, Persea Gratissima (Avocado), Oryza Sativa (Rice) Bran, Triticum Vulgare (Wheat) Germ and Butyrospermum Parkii (Shea Butter)**: emollient and vitamin-rich plant lipids that smooth and condition lip tissue while helping to prevent dehydration.
- **Hyaluronic Acid**: provides increased hydration and improved elasticity.

**benefits / top retailing points**
- Minimizes contour lines and smooths rough, uneven lips.
- Prevents the signs of aging caused by AGEs.
- Superior conditioning lasts hours beyond application and is ideal for wearing alone or as a smoothing primer before lipstick application.

---

0.06 Fl. Oz. / 1.75 mL
skin condition
All skin conditions, especially mature or prematurely-aging skin.

description
An intense, non-greasy treatment of botanicals and vitamins to protect and repair chapped hands while strengthening nails against splitting and peeling. Includes AGE Smart® actives to help control skin aging at the source.

top products to prescribe
• Body Hydrating Cream
• Conditioning Body Wash
• Exfoliating Body Scrub

multivitamin hand and nail treatment

application
Apply to hands and nails with a light massaging motion, following washing or as needed.

key ingredients
Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B5), Algae Extract and Citrus Grandis (Grapefruit) Peel: soothe and help heal dry, rough hands.

Vitis Vinifera (Grape) Seed Extract, Ginkgo Biloba, Ascorbyl Palmitate (Vitamin C) and Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E): antioxidants that help defend hands against further environmental damage.

Glycyrrhiza Glabra (Licorice) Root: an anti-inflammatory, antioxidant extract that soothes and calms skin. Helps reduce the appearance of hyperpigmentation.

benefits / top retailing points
Super-nourishing, fast-absorbing relief for the driest of hands without being greasy.

Brightening ingredients help reduce the signs of premature aging, including hyperpigmentation.

Delivers long-lasting softness while helping to repair damaged skin.

Strengthens nails to help alleviate splitting and breakage while relieving dry, cracked cuticles.

For clients concerned about hyperpigmentation on the back of the hands, add SPF protection by customizing with Solar Defense Booster SPF30. Alternatively, prescribe MultiVitamin BodyBlock SPF20 for daytime protection.

key ingredients
Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B5), Algae Extract and Citrus Grandis (Grapefruit) Peel: soothe and help heal dry, rough hands.

Vitis Vinifera (Grape) Seed Extract, Ginkgo Biloba, Ascorbyl Palmitate (Vitamin C) and Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E): antioxidants that help defend hands against further environmental damage.

Glycyrrhiza Glabra (Licorice) Root: an anti-inflammatory, antioxidant extract that soothes and calms skin. Helps reduce the appearance of hyperpigmentation.

application
Apply to hands and nails with a light massaging motion, following washing or as needed.

benefits / top retailing points
Super-nourishing, fast-absorbing relief for the driest of hands without being greasy.

Brightening ingredients help reduce the signs of premature aging, including hyperpigmentation.

Delivers long-lasting softness while helping to repair damaged skin.

Strengthens nails to help alleviate splitting and breakage while relieving dry, cracked cuticles.

For clients concerned about hyperpigmentation on the back of the hands, add SPF protection by customizing with Solar Defense Booster SPF30. Alternatively, prescribe MultiVitamin BodyBlock SPF20 for daytime protection.
The AGE Smart® professional-use-only products were developed for use on clients of all ages who are interested in professional treatments that can help them control the biochemical triggers that lead to skin aging. Use these products to customize the Dermalogica Core Treatment.
skin condition
Dry, sun damaged, mature or prematurely-aging skin.

description
A maximum strength exfoliant in a lipid base for optimal skin smoothness with minimal irritation. 15% Salicylic Acid concentrate provides faster, more intense exfoliation and delivery of treatment room results. This formula effectively removes dulling surface debris from the Stratum Corneum, revealing a fresher-looking, healthier new layer of skin and improves penetration of subsequent active ingredients.

bioactivity score 25

multivitamin power exfoliant

contraindications for use
Note: MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant must be removed with the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse and follows with Special Cleansing Gel to ensure proper removal of this oil-based product.

Do not use if skin is sensitive, sunburned, irritated or within 24 hours of waxing. Rinse off immediately if product causes discomfort. If you suspect your client could be sensitive or sensitized and may respond adversely to MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant prior to treatment, patch test on a small area behind the ear or inner arm (inside elbow) to evaluate skin response and potential for irritant contact dermatitis.

Clients using Retin-A, Renova, Adapalene or any other exfoliating topical medication must discontinue use at least two weeks before undergoing treatment. Clients who are taking Isotretinoin (sometimes marketed as Accutane) or have taken Isotretinoin within the past 6 months should not receive any exfoliation treatments. Do not perform exfoliation on sunburned or irritated skin, or skin that has been exfoliated or waxed within 24 hours. Evaluate the integrity of skin’s barrier layer prior to use.

This product contains Vitamin A. Consult a physician prior to use on pregnant women.

professional application

1. Twist open applicator tube and dispense fluid onto face with light, circular movements. Replace cap if all of product is not used.

2. Use carefully around the eye and lip areas to avoid direct contact with the eyes and mouth. A thin layer of Colloidal Masque Base can be applied to eye, lip and nasal fold areas.

3. Lightly massage product over skin with fingertips. Pay special attention to areas of visual dryness, fine lines and sun damage.

4. For sensitive skin: Leave on for 3 to 5 minutes. Do not use steam. For coarser skin: Leave on for 4 to 7 minutes. Use of steam is optional.

5. Assess the skin throughout the treatment. Remove immediately if discomfort or irritation is severe.

6. Dampen gauze with cold water to remove MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant. To ensure complete removal, perform the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse and follows with Special Cleansing Gel. Remove with a steam towel.

7. Follow with AGE Smart® Complex.

professional only
30 tubes per tin
**key ingredients**

**Retinol (Vitamin A):** helps increase skin elasticity and helps reverse the signs of prematurely-induced photoaging.

**Ascorbyl Palmitate (Vitamin C) and Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E):** antioxidants that improve skin smoothness and softness, and help control damage caused by free radicals.

**Lactic Acid:** an alpha hydroxy acid that smooths and retexturizes.

**Salicylic Acid (15%):** a beta hydroxy acid that optimizes exfoliation of skin cells.

**benefits**

- Contains a higher, more effective concentration of Salicylic Acid for optimum exfoliation.
- Packaging can be resealed for multiple treatment use.
- Unique lipid base that allows for massage application and maximum penetration while minimizing client sensitivity.
skin condition
Mature or prematurely-aging skin.

description
A highly-concentrated professional treatment that smooths skin texture and reinforces skin’s natural protective barrier while helping to prevent and correct the signs of aging well beyond the professional treatment.

professional application

1. Press 6 to 10 drops of AGE Smart® Complex onto the skin followed by an even layer of MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque over face and neck. Additional AGE Smart® Complex can be pressed into the skin prior to moisturizer application.

2. Apply an even layer of MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque over face and neck.

optional: Press 6 to 10 drops onto skin followed by 2 drops of Revitalizing Additive to perform Dermalogica’s Energizing Massage for the Face.

optional: Press 6 to 10 drops onto skin, then dampen gauze with Antioxidant HydraMist. Cover face and neck, tenting over nose and mouth area. Apply Contour Masque with a spatula all over face and neck and even over the eye area for a soothing / firming eye treatment.

optional: For increased product penetration, perform Iontophoresis for 4 to 7 minutes with AGE Smart® Complex under Colloidal Masque Base or MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque.

key ingredients

Arginine / Lysine Polypeptide: a peptide that acts as a sugar trap, binding sugars in the body to itself to prevent the formation of AGEs.

Palmitoyl Oligopeptide, Palmitoyl Tetrapeptide-7 and Palmitoyl Tripeptide-5: condition while stimulating collagen and elastin production. Firms skin by overriding the MMPs. Activates tissue growth factor (TGF), a peptide that is required in its active state, for collagen production to occur.

Glycine Soja (Soybean) Protein: a potent antioxidant that fights ROS, reduces inflammation, inhibits MMPs and stimulates new collagen synthesis while inhibiting the formation of AGEs.

Wheat Protein: provides firming properties to the skin.

Camellia Sinensis (White Tea) Leaf: rich in polyphenols; protects against free radical damage (ROS), fights the formation of AGEs and inhibits MMPs.

Saccharomyces Cerevisiae: an extract of Yeast, this is a rich source of vitamins, enzymes and proteins that stimulate wound healing, collagen formation and an increase of oxygen utilization in cells.

benefits
Encourages firmness and elasticity to help reduce the appearance of fine lines.

Prevents the signs of aging caused by AGEs.

Stimulates cell turnover and cell renewal without disturbing the skin’s pH balance.

Product continues to work once client leaves the treatment room.

Product penetration may be enhanced when used in conjunction with galvanic current.
This past decade has seen an enormous surge in popularity of skin brightening products formulated specifically to treat hyperpigmentation and increase skin luminosity. Traditionally, these products were popular in Asian-Pacific and African regions, but the demand for brightening products is gaining momentum across the globe. Currently, the Asian market leads the world in the number of products on the market to treat pigmentation issues; Asia alone accounts for 37% of the overall worldwide sales in this category. Undoubtedly, as the global population continues to age and years of sun damage, compounded by the influence of fluctuating hormones, manifests itself as uneven pigmentation, this category will continue to increase worldwide. Market research studies indicate that an uneven skin tone (as in hyperpigmentation and hypopigmentation) is perceived as “aged skin” while a more even skin coloration is judged to be “healthier and more youthful.” Today’s consumer is not only
looking to treat hyperpigmentation (also known as “age spots”), but to create a more even skin tone with enhanced luminosity.

Consumer demand for products that treat hyperpigmentation and uneven skin tone has spurred both pharmaceutical and cosmetic companies to research and develop new technology and products that are not only effective, but safe to use. As professional skin therapists, our focus must also be on seeking out products that are safe and effective for brightening the skin without causing irritation or damage, which can lead to premature aging or worse. At The International Dermal Institute, we have studied and updated our understanding of the underlying causes of hyperpigmentation, and subsequently created products containing the newest ingredient technology for the most effective, safe treatment of hyperpigmentation.

Causes of Hyperpigmentation: UV Exposure
While the amount of melanin synthesized in our skin is determined by our genetics (constitutive skin color), there is an overriding effect of the environment, such as exposure to UV radiation, which determines skin pigmentation levels (facultative color). Due to its ability to absorb UV radiation, the primary function of melanin is believed to be to protect the cells / skin from sunlight. Upon exposure to UV radiation, melanin synthesis is stimulated, resulting in a characteristic tan. Studies have shown that exposure to UV causes melanosomes to actually cluster, forming a protective cap over the nucleus of the cell. In addition to the development of an overall tan, exposure to UV light may also stimulate hyperpigmentation in specific spots on the hands, face and neck. These dark spots are often referred to as age spots or liver spots (lentigines), and usually become evident in our early forties and become increasingly more evident as we age. By the time we reach 60 years old, 90% of all individuals will have sun-induced age spots, known as lentigines.

Causes of Hyperpigmentation: Post-inflammatory Hyperpigmentation
In addition to genetics and environmental influences, skin pigmentation is effected by endocrine (hormonal) factors, usage of prescription drugs, stress, topically-applied products including cosmetics, and wound healing to the skin tissue. The latter incidence gives rise to post-inflammatory hyperpigmentation (PIH), a phenomenon that is more problematic for individuals with darker skin color. PIH stems from the melanocytes exaggerated response to injury, however slight, which results in an increased or abnormal distribution of melanin in the tissues.

Causes of Hyperpigmentation: Melasma
Hormonally-induced pigmentation manifests itself in various forms, such as hyperpigmentation spots and melasma, better known as the mask of pregnancy. Melasma affects primarily women of child-bearing age. Some studies suggest that up to 75% of women may develop melasma during pregnancy and about 33% of women on birth control pills also complain of this problem. It is more prevalent in women with darker skin color and it is most commonly seen in areas that are exposed to sunlight. Some scientists say UV exposure seems to be a requirement for melasma to develop, which may account for the fact that it is less noticeable in winter months when UV exposure is lower. Melasma is seen as an irregularly shaped patch of hyperpigmentation ranging from light brown to dark brown. The most common pattern is the centrofacial: on the chin, upper lip, cheeks, nose and forehead. To a lesser extent, melasma is seen on the cheeks and nose, or on the jaw line.
Skin Lightening and Hydroquinone

For years, Hydroquinone, classified as an over-the-counter drug in the United States, and has been used in concentrations up to 2% within products designed to lighten skin. While Hydroquinone may be a popular pigment lightener, there are many concerns regarding its safety. It is because of these concerns that Dermalogica does not formulate any product with Hydroquinone.

It has been estimated that one third of the population is allergic to Hydroquinone. Serious contact dermatitis has been noted and skin may be photosensitized with prolonged use. Hydroquinone has been classified as “an extreme sensitizer.” In some cases, a condition known as onchronosis can result, leading to hyperpigmentation and acne-like lesions. Others report hypopigmentation results when used on an olive skin color. The Occupational Safety and Health Administration in the USA states that Hydroquinone is “mutagenic and has cancer causing potential.” The Addendum to the Final Report on the Safety Assessment of Hydroquinone published in the Journal of the American College of Toxicology in 1994 concludes that Hydroquinone is a potent cytotoxic agent that causes mutations and alterations to DNA, and that it should not be used in any leave-on type of product; it is safe for rinse-off products when used in concentrations less than 1%. Remember, most OTC products marketed to lighten pigmentation use Hydroquinone at a 2% concentration. Based on the results of these studies, it is no surprise that the use of Hydroquinone has been banned in many countries throughout the world. In the USA, products formulated to lighten pigmentation are classified as over-the-counter drugs and must be in compliance to Federal Monographs that dictate what ingredients and claims may be made. As of 2008, Hydroquinone is the only ingredient recognized as a lightening agent by the US FDA. Consequently, any other ingredient used to lighten skin must be referred to as a brightening agent and not a lightener.

In the past, Hydroquinone has fallen out of favor and even been banned in most of the world, and there has been an onslaught of alternative brightening agents that are now marketed to combat hyperpigmentation.

In 2007, the USA Food and Drug Administration (FDA) reported that it intended banning the use of Hydroquinone in non-prescription products (due to safety issues) but to date, no new regulations have been implemented.

For the past five years at The International Dermal Institute we have focused our research on understanding the intricacies behind melanin biosynthesis and have investigated every new lightening agent available to the cosmetic chemist. ChromaWhite TRx® is the result of this extensive research effort and represents a complete system for addressing hyperpigmentation. ChromaWhite TRx® is not just a pigment-lightening product range; it encompasses an entire system of products designed to optimize results by prepping the skin, preventing hyperpigmentation and protecting skin from future pigmentation issues, all without compromising skin health. Our clinical evaluations have demonstrated that prepping by exfoliating the pigmented area and protecting by shielding skin from further UV-induced pigmentation are as critical of steps as actual treatment when working to correct hyperpigmentation. In addition to many key botanical extracts known to help control hyperpigmentation triggers on a cellular level, the newest the newest agents to fight melanin formation are the peptides. Oligopeptide-34 is a state-of-the-art synthesized peptide shown to brighten skin, especially sun-induced hyperpigmentation, in half the time when compared to other brightening complexes.
**skin condition**
Hyperpigmented skin and uneven skin tone.

**description**
A triple-active concentrated cleanser that improves surface clarity, lifts dulling skin cells and prepares skin for maximum penetration of our unique complex of enzymes, peptides and active brighteners. Skin is left feeling ultra-clean and conditioned.

**top products to prescribe**
- C-12 Concentrate
- Extreme C
- Pure Light SPF30

---

**tri-active cleanse**

**application**
Following the removal of PreCleanse, dispense a small amount of Tri-Active Cleanse onto dampened hands and work into a light lather. Apply to dampened face and throat, massaging with light, upward strokes for at least 30 seconds, avoiding the eye area. Rinse thoroughly with warm water. Use Tri-Active Cleanse once or twice a day depending on skin sensitivity. Follow with C-12 Concentrate, Extreme C and Pure Light SPF30 during the day or Pure Night in the evening.

**professional application**

1. Perform the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse. Note: Upon beginning second cleanse with Tri-Active Cleanse, steam may be used to facilitate the cleansing process by further softening the skin.

2. Lightly lather Tri-Active Cleanse and apply with a flowing effleurage, spreading movement over the entire face, throat and upper décolleté, avoiding the eye area. Ensure slip-and-glide by combining with water or customizing with Replenishing Botanical Mixer.

3. Damp sponges, a steam towel customized with Replenishing Botanical Mixer or The Sponge Cloth can be used to remove all traces of cleanser.

4. Use Tri-Active Cleanse once or twice a day depending on skin sensitivity. Follow with C-12 Concentrate, Extreme C and Pure Light SPF30 during the day or Pure Night in the evening.

**key ingredients**

- **Lactic Acid** lifts dulling, discolored skin cells to improve surface clarity.

- **Ascorbyl Glucoside (Vitamin C), Glycine Soya (Soybean) Seed Extract, Morus Alba (Mulberry) Root Extract and Ferula Foetida (Giant Fennel) Root Extract**: help brighten surface spots.

- **Antioxidant Camellia Sinensis (White Tea) Extract and Ascorbyl Glucoside (Vitamin C)**: control oxidation critical to skin brightness.

- **Niacinamide**: helps minimize color deposits into new cells for improved luminosity.

- **Butyrosperum Parkii (Shea Butter) and Hyaluronic Acid**: provide critical moisturization.

**benefits / top retailing points**

- Deep cleans and preps skin for optimum penetration of brightening agents.

- Removes dulling surface cells for improved skin clarity.
skin condition
Hyperpigmented skin and uneven skin tone

description
Remove dulling surface cells and help maximize the absorption of brightening treatments with this potent, two-part powder-liquid system that activates when combined.

top products to prescribe
• C-12 Concentrate
• Extreme C
• Pure Light SPF30

application
To activate, press firmly down on button in cap to release powder. Shake until powder and liquid are combined. Twist off cap, and twist applicator onto base. Pull to remove applicator cap. Dispense 5 to 6 drops directly onto face and neck with fingertips, avoiding eye area, and gently massage over the skin until absorbed. Allow to activate for 2 to 3 minutes and rinse thoroughly. Reseal with applicator tip. Follow with C-12 Concentrate, Extreme C and Pure Light SPF30 during the day or Pure Night in the evening. To reactivate upon next application, gently shake to combine ingredients. Use opened vial within 4 weeks. Use twice weekly after cleansing.

contraindications for use
Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

key ingredients
Lactobacillus / Pumpkin Fruit Ferment, Papain and Salicylic Acid: help exfoliate surface cells to aid in brightening of skin.
Lactic Acid: an alpha hydroxy acid, stimulates cell renewal and cell turnover while brightening the skin.
Phytic Acid: chelates Copper to inhibit Tyrosinase enzyme involved in melanin formation.
Niacinamide: inhibits transfer of melanosomes to keratinocytes.
Ascorbyl Glucoside (Vitamin C), Ferula Foetida Root Extract, Glycyrrhiza Glabra (Licorice) Root Extract and Camellia Sinensis (White Tea) Extract: brighten skin.

benefits / top retailing points
Removes dulling surface cells to help maximize absorption of brightening treatments.
Dramatically smooths and brightens skin.
Dual-chamber delivery system ensures maximum potency and freshness upon activation for unsurpassed results.
c-12 concentrate

Skin condition
Hyperpigmented skin and uneven skin tone.

Description
A silky-rich, high-potency treatment that brightens, minimizes discoloration and improves skin clarity.

Top products to prescribe
• Extreme C
• Pure Night
• Powerfoliant®

Key ingredients
- Oligopeptide-34: a proprietary peptide that reduces Tyrosinase activity and melanosome transfer to cells.
- Zinc Glycinate: stimulates formation of an antioxidant protein that binds Copper, thereby inhibiting Tyrosinase.
- Palmaria Palmata and Ascophyllum Nodosum: inhibit Tyrosinase activity and transfer of melanosomes to keratinocytes. Stops the messenger that triggers melanin synthesis.
- Phytic Acid: binds Copper to inactivate Tyrosinase.

Application
After cleansing, apply directly to areas of discoloration or all over to even out overall tone. Follow with Extreme C and Pure Light SPF30 during the day or Pure Night in the evening. Use twice daily to improve skin tone and clarity.

Benefits / Top retailing points
- Helps treat cellular discoloration.
- Velvety Silicones absorb quickly, conditioning skin and reinforcing barrier lipid layer.
**skin condition**
Hyperpigmented skin and uneven skin tone.

**description**
A unique powder-to-emulsion treatment that delivers a high concentration of Magnesium Ascorbyl Phosphate (MAP) combined with brightening agents and exfoliants to optimize skin clarity.

**top products to prescribe**
- Tri-Active Cleanse
- C-12 Concentrate
- Pure Light SPF30

**application**
To use as a spot treatment, dispense a small amount onto fingertip and press against skin while blending over areas of pigmentation or uneven skin tone. May be applied under Pure Light SPF30, Pure Night, or prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer. As an all-over treatment, mix a pea-sized amount into prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer and apply to entire face and throat.

**key ingredients**
- **Magnesium Ascorbyl Phosphate (MAP):** a non-acidic, stable form of Vitamin C; helps inhibit melanin formation.
- **Camellia Sinensis (White Tea) Extract:** accelerates skin brightening and strengthens skin’s defenses against future discoloration on a cellular level.
- **Zinc Glycinate:** stimulates formation of an antioxidant protein that binds Copper, thereby inhibiting Tyrosinase.
- **Niacinamide and Glucosamine:** help prevent transfer of melanosomes to keratinocytes.
- **Glucosamine, Algae Extract, Yeast Extract and Lactobacillus / Pumpkin Fruit Ferment:** help exfoliate surface cells to smooth, enhance skin tone and eliminate dark spots.

**benefits / top retailing points**
- Accelerates skin brightening.
- Strengthens skin’s defenses against future discoloration.
- Silky emulsion glides gently over skin for efficient application.

**retail**
NET WT 0.3 Oz. / 8 g
**skin condition**
Hyperpigmented skin and uneven skin tone.

**description**
A medium-weight daytime treatment moisturizer that conditions and brightens skin while sunscreens help defend skin against pigment-inducing UV light.

**top products to prescribe**
- Tri-Active Cleanse
- C-12 Concentrate
- Powerfoliant®

---

**pure light spf30**

**application**
Following application of C-12 Concentrate and Extreme C, apply evenly and liberally to face, throat and neck, preferably 30 minutes prior to sun exposure. Use as your daily moisturizer for year-round protection against sun damage.

**professional application**
1. Following application of prescribed Dermalogica Toner, apply Pure Light SPF30 evenly to the face, throat and neck. Blend with fingertips to complete professional treatment.

**key ingredients**
**Exclusive blend of peptides, Ascorbyl Glucoside (Vitamin C), Zinc Glycinate and botanical extracts:** helps treat and prevent cellular discoloration for unsurpassed skin brightening and skin tone improvement.

- **Niacinamide:** helps prevent transfer of melanosomes to keratinocytes.

- **Titanium Dioxide and Zinc Oxide:** provide SPF30 protection against UVA and UVB exposure while enhancing skin luminosity.

- **UV Smart Booster Technology with antioxidant vitamins C and E:** provides enhanced photoprotection and helps prevent UV-induced pigmentation.

- **Hyaluronic Acid:** hydrates skin tissue, helping to minimize fine dryness lines.

**benefits / top retailing points**
Antioxidants and botanical extracts help guard against further pigmentation.

Natural mineral UV-blockers protect against UVA and UVB photodamage.

---

**retail**
- 1.7 Fl. Oz. / 50 mL

**professional**
- 4 Fl. Oz. / 118 mL
skin condition
Hyperpigmented skin and uneven skin tone.

description
A nourishing and brightening overnight treatment to brighten and help minimize surface spots while conditioning and hydrating skin.

top products to prescribe
• Tri-Active Cleanse
• C-12 Concentrate
• Extreme C

pure night

application
Cleanse with Tri-Active Cleanse and follow with C-12 Concentrate and Extreme C. Apply Pure Night in the evening to entire face, throat and neck, concentrating on areas of dryness.

key ingredients
Oligopeptide-34, Vitamin C and Hydroxycinnamic Acid: help prevent cellular discoloration for unsurpassed skin brightening.

Gluconic Acid and Phytic Acid: chelate Copper, inhibiting melanin synthesis.

Zinc Glycinate: stimulates formation of an antioxidant protein that binds Copper, thereby inhibiting Tyrosinase.

Niacinamide: helps prevent transfer of melanosomes to keratinocytes.

Glycyrrhiza Glabra (Licorice) Root Extract, Camellia Sinensis (White Tea) Extract and Beta-Carotene: help scavenge free radicals and fight melanin formation.

Lactobacillus / Pumpkin Fruit Ferment and Sutilains: help exfoliate skin and enhance skin luminosity.

Simmondsia Chinensis (Jojoba) Seed, Vaccinium Macrocarpon (Cranberry) and Rubus Idaeus (Raspberry) Seed oils: improve barrier protection against moisture loss and shield against environmental damage.

benefits / top retailing points
Helps treat and prevent cellular discoloration for unsurpassed brightening and skin tone improvement.

Smoothes fine dryness lines while nourishing skin.

Improves barrier protection against moisture loss and strengthens against environmental damage.
ChromaWhite TRx® professional-use-only products will be most effective when delivered as part of a series of treatments that are combined with a scrupulous home regimen. The products are recommended for use on clients of all ages who express concern over uneven skin tone and desire an increase in luminosity.
ChromaWhite TRx® complex

**skin condition**
Hyperpigmented skin and uneven skin tone.

**description**
A super-concentrated brightening treatment containing our exclusive blend of peptides, minerals and botanical extracts to deliver actives to targeted areas, brightening and improving clarity.

**professional application**

1. Press 6 to 10 drops onto skin.
2. Apply an even layer of Contour Masque over face, neck and eye area, or select from Dermalogica’s Professional Masque options.
3. Additional ChromaWhite TRx® Complex can be pressed into skin prior to applying Pure Light SPF30.

**optional:**
For increased penetration and results, use beneath Collodial Masque Base with Galvanic Current on the negative polarity (2 minutes) and positive polarity (4 minutes).

**key ingredients**

- **Zinc Glycinate:** stimulates formation of an antioxidant protein that binds Copper, thereby inhibiting Tyrosinase.
- **Niacinamide:** inhibits transfer of melanosomes to keratinocytes.
- **Lactobacillus / Citrus Medica Limonum Peel Ferment:** stimulates natural exfoliation to enhance skin clarity.
- **Ferula Foetida Root Extract:** slows enzyme activity, inhibiting melanin formation.
- **Phytic Acid:** chelates Copper, inhibiting step two of melanogenesis.

**benefits**
Concentrated brightening serum helps treat cellular discoloration and uneven pigmentation.

Oligopeptide-34 is a proprietary peptide that reduces Tyrosinase activity and melanosomal transfer to cells.
Millions of people perceive their skin as sensitive. The American Academy of Dermatology reports that 50% of the United States population experience some form of sensitive skin. Globally, it is of increasing concern, especially among women. In Europe, the United States and Japan, the prevalence of sensitive skin is about 50% in women and 30% in men, with younger adults reporting more sensitivity than older adults. In reality, there is sensitive skin (a genetic trait) and there is sensitized skin, a growing phenomenon worldwide caused by increased exposure to pollution, stress and chemicals. The growing number of people affected by sensitization has spurred cosmetic and pharmaceutical industries to develop new products to help combat the reactions triggered by this condition. Regardless of the classification of skin sensitivity versus sensitization, the common thread among these conditions is inflammation, and research at The International Dermal Institute reveals many formulations are not addressing...
one key factor: neurogenic inflammation. And, in order to care for sensitized and inflamed skin, it is important to understand the characteristics of the various factors producing this condition.

The Inflammatory Response: Immunogenic Inflammation

The body’s immune system helps protect it from disease. The immune system has different components, all of which work together to fight against infection and foreign invaders. When the body is injured or irritated, it responds with inflammation. The inflammatory response is a natural process that serves to remove the injurious stimuli, as well as initiate the healing process. Immunogenic inflammation involves the activation of white blood cells, the primary agents for fighting off intruders. They normally reside in the blood and must travel to the inflamed tissue. There, they attack and destroy invaders such as bacteria, viruses and cellular debris. This process results in the pain, redness, swelling and heat associated with inflammation.

The Inflammatory Response: Neurogenic Inflammation

Recent scientific data has proposed another system that also triggers the inflammatory response. Whereas immunogenic inflammation is triggered by the immune system, neurogenic inflammation is triggered by the nervous system. When an irritant chemical activates nerve sensors, it results in the release of substances called neuropeptides that also trigger the inflammatory cascade. Under normal conditions, these substances play a role in tissue repair; however, they are also found in a variety of painful inflammatory conditions such as urticaria (itching), psoriasis, atopic dermatitis, hypersensitivity and wound healing. Interestingly, not all of these substances promote inflammation; some of them may in fact end the inflammatory process.

In addition to allergens that may stimulate an immune response or chemicals that stimulate a nerve response, emotional and physical stress can also induce a neurogenic response resulting in skin itchiness, inhibited wound healing and aggravated inflammation. Work, deadlines, toxin accumulation and the environment can all be stressors. The elevated levels of stress hormones cause inflammatory reactions in the body, which can lead to many forms of skin and overall health concerns. Both immunogenic and neurogenic inflammation can yield the same redness, itching and swelling that result when the body is injured or irritated. In the end, it is the combination of genetic susceptibility, immune disruption, nerve activity and epidermal barrier function that contributes to skin sensitivity and inflammation.

Lipid Barrier Breakdown

In order to maximize our treatment regimen to control and alleviate sensitization associated with both immunogenic and neurogenic inflammation, we must consider one other factor, namely, the lipid barrier layer and its impact on sensitized skin. Comprised of ceramides, fatty acids and cholesterol, the lipid barrier layer not only maintains water balance in the skin by inhibiting TEWL (trans epidermal water loss) but it also protects against environmental stimuli such as microbes, chemicals and physical factors. Any of these stimuli may evoke a cutaneous (skin) reaction, leading to sensitization, inflammation and even disease. Because of its protective role, maintaining the integrity of the barrier lipids is an important factor in controlling skin health.
sensitization. In maintaining the barrier lipid layer at its optimal performance level, we can control the damaging effects of environment and lifestyle on skin, thereby controlling sensitivity. The lipid barrier layer may be compromised by the use of soap and water which strips the lipids from the skin (resulting in tautness), extremely low (2.5-3.5) or high (above 8) pH products, strong AHA products, S.D. alcohol in products and over-exfoliation, among other things. Once the lipid layer is compromised, the skin dehydrates, causing microscopic fissures in the epidermis; these are now perfect portals into the skin for potentially irritating substances. This is why dehydration is often seen in sensitized skin.

Recent studies have shown that patients with atopic dermatitis, a skin condition associated with inflammation, have deficiencies in the three lipids: ceramides, cholesterol and free fatty acids. Corrective therapy with a triple lipid mixture not only helped restore the barrier layer of the epidermis, but also resulted in a reduction of inflammation. What can be done to help relieve sensitized skin?

While sensitized and sensitive skin reactions may look and feel the same, they stem from the three separate biological reactions we’ve discussed: immunogenic inflammation, neurogenic inflammation and a compromised protective lipid barrier layer.

Research at The International Dermal Institute reveals that when specific active botanical extracts are combined, they can help control inflammation and reduce the signs of sensitivity, irritation and redness that accompany immunogenic and neurogenic inflammation without interrupting the positive effects of the body’s defenses including wound healing and bacterial defense.

As such, we created the proprietary *UltraCalming™ Complex*, containing the following active botanical extracts:

- **Avena Sativa (Oat Kernel) extracts:** rich in avenanthramides, the active component of the Avena Sativa plant, which have been widely studied and proven to have natural anti-irritant and anti-redness properties.
- **Zingiber Officinale (Ginger) Extract and Bisabolol (derived from Chamomile):** work synergistically to help reduce inflammation induced redness and irritation.
- **Boerhavia Diffusa (Red Hogweed) Root Extract:** targets neurogenic inflammation and restores tissue integrity by limiting the activity of pro-inflammatory agents, as well as promoting the production of natural anti-inflammatory agents in the skin.

While our exclusive *UltraCalming™ Complex* is an effective means of treating immunogenic and neurogenic inflammation, it only addresses part of the problem. To optimize complete treatment of sensitized skin, we must also take lipid barrier breakdown into account.

To complement our exclusive *UltraCalming™ Complex*, we have researched and developed a proprietary lipid blend that reinforces the barrier lipid layer with fatty acids, ceramides and sterols. Oil of Evening Primrose, Borage Seed and Oat Kernel provide an enriched source of gamma linoleic acid, a required component of an intact, functional epidermal layer. In addition to being rich in essential fatty acids, Oat has natural antioxidant and anti-irritant properties to help correct and soothe irritated skin. Sunflower (Helianthus Annuus) Seed Extract provides natural ceramides, which ensure proper cohesion of skin cells and minimize skin dehydration, and Avocado (Persea Gratissima) sterols provide a rich source of natural plant phytosterols.

In addition to our proprietary formulations and complexes, *UltraCalming™* was developed under the same safe and effective formulation standards of all Dermalogica products and is free of S.D. alcohol, artificial fragrances and colors and lanolin.

All *UltraCalming™* products are dermatologist tested for irritation by independent medical professionals. *UltraCalming™* gives skin care professionals, and the clients they treat, more effective sensitized skin care than ever before.

---

1. HAPPI, (Feb 2006) p. 44
skin condition
Sensitized, reactive and recently resurfaced skin.

description
This extremely gentle, pH-balanced gel / cream glides easily over face to cleanse without stripping the skin’s protective barrier.

top products to prescribe
• UltraCalming™ Mist
• UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate
• Barrier Repair

ultracalming™ cleanser

application
Apply to dry or damp face and neck with light, upward strokes and over closed eyes with gentle circular motions. Rinse thoroughly with warm water or remove with damp cotton pads, The Sponge Cloth or other soft wipe. Follow with UltraCalming™ Mist and UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate.

professional application
1. Following PreCleanse, dispense a small amount of UltraCalming™ Cleanser into dampened hands.
2. Apply to damp face and throat and gently massage with fingertips using light, upward strokes.
   optional: PreCleanse may be omitted and UltraCalming™ Cleanser can be applied to dry skin and used to cleanse the skin of clients so sensitized they cannot tolerate water.
3. Rinse thoroughly with tepid water, or gently remove with damp cotton pads or The Sponge Cloth (dampened), or a soft, dry cotton pad.
4. Follow with UltraCalming™ Mist and UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate. For skin conditions requiring more hydration, follow with Barrier Repair.

key ingredients

UltraCalming™ Complex: helps reduce sensitivity, redness, irritation and inflammation.

Rubus Idaeus (Raspberry) Fruit Extract: promotes healing while providing soothing properties to inflamed skin.

Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender) Fruit Extract: has antiseptic and disinfectant qualities; can also be used to desensitize the skin.

Cucumis Sativus (Cucumber) Fruit Extract: contains cooling agents that help soothe and calm irritated skin.

Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B5): promotes tissue regeneration and acts as a humectant.

benefits / top retailing points
Improved formula is sulfate-free and includes UltraCalming™ Complex.

Helps calm and cool the redness, heat and discomfort of sensitized or highly reactive skin.

Easily rinses away or wipes off, making it ideal for skin so sensitized it cannot tolerate water.
ultracalming™ mist

skin condition
Sensitized, reactive and recently resurfaced skin.

description
A soothing, hydrating mist that quickly relieves sensitivity while helping to calm redness, stinging and aggravated skin.

top products to prescribe
• UltraCalming™ Cleanser
• UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate
• UltraCalming™ Relief Masque

application
After cleansing, spray over face, neck and chest with eyes closed. For added benefits, press into skin. May also be sprayed onto fingertips or dampened cotton pad and applied to the skin with light, upward strokes. Follow with UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate or prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer.

professional application
1. After cleansing with UltraCalming™ Cleanser, spray UltraCalming™ Mist over entire face, throat and upper chest with eyes closed.
2. Follow with UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate.
optional:
Can be used after epilation, waxing or exfoliation for soothing benefits.

key ingredients

UltraCalming™ Complex: helps reduce sensitivity, redness, irritation and inflammation.

Hydroxyphenyl Propamidobenzoic Acid: synthetic avenanthramide (Oat active) used to boost the efficacy of natural Oat.

Aloe Barbadensis Leaf Juice: skin soothing agent.

benefits / top retailing points

Quickly relieves inflammation and discomfort, helping skin recover from damage and lipid barrier breakdown.

Helps condition skin to prepare for proper moisture absorption.

Easy-to-use spray application.

Can be used after epilation, waxing or exfoliation for soothing benefits.

retail
1.7 Fl. Oz. / 50 mL
6 Fl. Oz. / 177 mL

professional
12 Fl. Oz. / 355 mL
ultracalming™
serum concentrate

application
After cleansing and spraying with UltraCalming™ Mist, apply a generous amount to face, neck and chest with light, upward strokes. Use twice daily, morning and night. For additional moisturization, follow application with Barrier Repair or prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer.

professional application
1 At the end of the professional treatment and after application of UltraCalming™ Mist, apply a generous amount of UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate over face and throat with light, upward strokes. May be followed with Barrier Repair or prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer.

key ingredients
UltraCalming™ Complex: helps reduce sensitivity, redness, irritation and inflammation.

Acetyl Tetrapeptide-15: a tetrapeptide that targets neurosensitive skin by decreasing the release of pro-inflammatory mediators and increasing the skin’s sensitivity tolerance threshold, making skin less reactive and diminishing sensations of pain and discomfort.

Portulaca Oleracea Extract: an enriched extract of vitamins, fatty acids, flavonoids and anti-inflammatory agents that help control and reduce redness.

Sodium Hyaluronate: a natural component of the skin that holds a thousand times its weight in water maintaining optimum hydration levels of tissues.

Oenothera Biennis (Evening Primrose), Helianthus Annuus (Sunflower) Seed Extract and Persea Gratissima (Avocado) Sterols: rich in essential fatty acids, ceramides and phytosterols that fortify skin’s barrier lipid layer, protecting against assaults that trigger redness and irritation.

benefits / top retailing points
Helps interrupt inflammatory triggers to prevent flare-ups.

Best used every day on sensitized skin while ideal for flare-ups on all skin conditions.

Provides enough hydration for oily to normal skin conditions.

Also can be used following non-invasive cosmetic procedures to help calm and soothe skin.
ultrasmothing eye serum

**skin condition**
Prematurely-aging, sensitized, reactive and recently resurfaced skin.

**description**
Now, even the most sensitized skin conditions can address the primary signs of aging around the delicate eye area. Helps stimulate collagen production and promotes cellular repair while reducing puffiness with a unique blend of peptides and plant flavonoids. Helps smooth away fine lines and shield against the damage that leads to premature aging of the eye area.

**top products to prescribe**
- UltraCalming™ Mist
- UltraCaming™ Serum Concentrate
- UltraCalming™ Relief Masque

**application**
After cleansing, gently smooth around the eye area.

**key ingredients**

* **UltraCalming™ Complex:** helps reduce sensitivity, redness, irritation and inflammation.

* **Palmitoyl Tetrapeptide-7:** Restores elasticity and firmness to reinforce fragile tissues while decreasing inflammatory mediators to control sensitization.

* **Peumus Boldus Leaf Extract:** from the Chilean Boldo Tree; an anti-inflammatory, powerful antioxidant that protects the cells.

* **Magnesium Ascorbyl Phosphate:** a non-acidic, stable form of Vitamin C that stimulates collagen formation, provides antioxidant protection and inhibits MMPs that contribute to collagen breakdown.

* **Dipeptide-2:** Helps reduce fluid retention and puffiness by correcting lymphatic drainage.

* **Citrulline:** An amino acid derived from watermelon rind which forms a critical part of the skin’s water-based moisturizing complex.

* **Polygonum Cuspidatum Root Extract:** Also known as Mexican Bamboo or Japanese Knotweed. Stimulates cellular longevity and antioxidant defenses by activating Sirtuin proteins that provide protection against free radicals.

**benefits / top retailing points**
Provides a unique treatment option to those with sensitized skin; helps repair the delicate eye area while soothing and addressing eye area puffiness, fine lines and dehydration.

Creates a protective barrier on the skin while helping to decrease the eventual inflammation brought on by harmful UV rays, free radicals and the aging process.

Boosts skin’s natural moisturizing factor for intense hydration.

Helps defend against ROS and MMPs.
skin condition
Sensitized, reactive and recently resurfaced skin.

description
A unique anhydrous moisturizer that melts gently into sensitized skin to soothe and reinforce the protective barrier. Now formulated with our exclusive UltraCalming™ Complex.

top products to prescribe
- UltraCalming™ Cleanser
- UltraCalming™ Mist
- UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate

barrier repair

application
Apply a small amount evenly over face and throat with light, upward strokes. Best used following UltraCalming™ Mist and UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate. Use twice daily, morning and night.

professional application
1. After application of UltraCalming™ Mist and UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate, apply a small amount of Barrier Repair over face and throat with light, upward strokes.

optional:
Super Sensitive FaceBlock SPF30 can be applied after Barrier Repair for UV daylight protection.

key ingredients
- UltraCalming™ Complex: helps reduce sensitivity, redness, irritation and inflammation.
- Ascorbyl Palmitate, Tetrahexyldecyl Ascorbate and Tocopheryl Acetate: vitamins C and E help combat free radicals and stimulate collagen formation.
- Avena Sativa (Oat) Kernel Oil: an enriched Oat extract with natural antioxidants and fatty acids that reduces irritation and reinforces the barrier lipid layer.
- Oenothera Biennis (Evening Primrose) Oil: skin nutrient high in gamma linoleic acid (GLA) to reinforce the barrier lipid layer.
- Borago Officinalis (Borage Seed) Oil: high in gamma linoleic acid, this is a fatty acid that is also required for intact epidermal lipid bilayers.
- Silicones: fortify skin’s natural defense against the environment and dehydration.

benefits / top retailing points
- Improved formula includes UltraCalming™ Complex.
- Creates a shield against environmental assault to help prevent further damaging assaults.
- Silicones reinforce lipid barrier layer.
- Provides a smooth, even base, ideal for preparing skin for make-up application.
skin condition
Skin prone to redness.

description
Neutralize, relieve and defend against inflammation and redness induced by skin sensitivity and rosacea with this three-in-one SPF moisturizer. Natural earth minerals provide a sheer green tint to actively counter telltale redness, while soothing extracts calm inflamed, irritated skin. Sunscreens, Vitamin E and phytoactive anti-irritant agents provide critical defense against UV rays and help to control severity of daily flare-ups and long-term damage caused by the elements.

top products to prescribe
• UltraCalming™ Cleanser
• Gentle Soothing Booster
• UltraCalming™ Mist

redness relief spf20

application
After cleansing and toning, apply gently to face, allowing a small amount of the green tint to remain lightly visible on skin. Apply in the morning or prior to sun exposure. Use caution around hairline, eyes, eyebrows and light-colored clothing. May be used alone or applied before Treatment Foundation.

key ingredients
UltraCalming™ Complex: helps reduce sensitivity, redness, irritation and inflammation.

Octinoxate: chemical sunscreen that provides optimum UVA and UVB protection.

Zinc Oxide: provides protection against UVA and UVB rays.

Dimethicone: a skin conditioning silicone that protects and reinforces barrier lipids which are often compromised in sensitized skin conditions.

Chromium Oxide Greens: an earth mineral with a natural green pigment that helps cancel out visible redness in skin.

Bisabolol: helps reduce redness, sensitivity and inflammation.

Zingiber Officinale (Ginger) Root Extract: works synergistically with Bisabolol to reduce erythema (redness) associated with skin irritation.

Saccharomyces Lysate Extract: yeast ferment with anti-inflammatory properties, assists with cellular respiration.

benefits / top retailing points
Perfect as a redness-reducing make-up prep.

Natural earth minerals provide a sheer green tint to counter redness associated with sensitized skin conditions. Free of D&C colorants and synthetic fragrances that often trigger reactions in sensitized skin.

Soothes immediate inflammation and redness while protecting against free radicals and UV rays that can cause future damage.

application
After cleansing and toning, apply gently to face, allowing a small amount of the green tint to remain lightly visible on skin. Apply in the morning or prior to sun exposure. Use caution around hairline, eyes, eyebrows and light-colored clothing. May be used alone or applied before Treatment Foundation.

key ingredients
UltraCalming™ Complex: helps reduce sensitivity, redness, irritation and inflammation.

Octinoxate: chemical sunscreen that provides optimum UVA and UVB protection.

Zinc Oxide: provides protection against UVA and UVB rays.

Dimethicone: a skin conditioning silicone that protects and reinforces barrier lipids which are often compromised in sensitized skin conditions.

Chromium Oxide Greens: an earth mineral with a natural green pigment that helps cancel out visible redness in skin.

Bisabolol: helps reduce redness, sensitivity and inflammation.

Zingiber Officinale (Ginger) Root Extract: works synergistically with Bisabolol to reduce erythema (redness) associated with skin irritation.

Saccharomyces Lysate Extract: yeast ferment with anti-inflammatory properties, assists with cellular respiration.

benefits / top retailing points
Perfect as a redness-reducing make-up prep.

Natural earth minerals provide a sheer green tint to counter redness associated with sensitized skin conditions. Free of D&C colorants and synthetic fragrances that often trigger reactions in sensitized skin.

Soothes immediate inflammation and redness while protecting against free radicals and UV rays that can cause future damage.
skin condition
Sensitized, reactive and recently resurfaced skin.

description
A powerful, ultra-calming treatment masque enriched with Colloidal Oatmeal to soothe enraged skin and provide lasting relief from sensitized skin flare-ups and redness.

top products to prescribe
- UltraCalming™ Cleanser
- UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate
- Barrier Repair

ultracalming™ relief masque

application
Apply generously to cleansed face and throat or areas with or prone to sensitivity (i.e., cheeks or eye areas). Allow to process at least 10 minutes to fully activate. Gently rinse with warm water. Apply 2 to 3 times per week or whenever skin requires a soothing remedy. Follow with UltraCalming™ Mist and UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate.

key ingredients

UltraCalming™ Complex: helps reduce sensitivity, redness, irritation and inflammation.

Portulaca Oleracea Extract: an enriched extract of vitamins, fatty acids, flavonoids and anti-inflammatory agents that help control and reduce redness.

Colloidal Oatmeal: pharmaceutical-grade Oatmeal helps soothe irritated skin.

Algae extracts with Artemisia (Mugwort): anti-irritant, anti-inflammatory blend that helps reduce redness from UV exposure, chemical irritants and the environment.

Trametes Versicolor Extract and Cordyceps Sinensis: mushroom extracts that reduce short and long-term skin inflammation and redness.

Chamomilla Recutita (Matricaria) Flower Extract: source of Bisabolol that soothes and calms irritated skin.

benefits / top retailing points
Can be used whenever skin requires a soothing remedy.

Botanicals help soothe and calm stressed skin.

Reinforces barrier function to protect against future assaults.

2.5 Fl. Oz. / 75 mL
UltraCalming™ professional

ultracalming™ serum concentrate

Recommended for sensitized, reactive and recently resurfaced skin.

Super-concentrated serum that helps calm sensitized skin while restoring the natural lipid barrier layer to defend against future assaults.

4 FL OZ. / 118 mL

ultracalming™ complex

Recommended for sensitized, reactive, or resurfaced skin.

1/4 FL OZ. / 10 mL
ultracalming™ complex

**skin condition**
Sensitized, reactive and recently resurfaced skin.

**description**
A highly concentrated professional treatment that helps relieve sensitivity, redness, itching and burning triggered by inflammation. This professional-use-only product fortifies skin's protective barrier and helps impede inflammatory triggers that lead to sensitized skin.

**professional application**

1. Press 6 to 10 drops onto skin.
2. Apply an even layer of Clinical Colloidal Masque over face, neck and eye area.
   - Optional: Additional UltraCalming™ Complex can be pressed into the skin prior to moisturizer application.
   - Optional: For increased penetration and results, use beneath Colloidal Masque Base with Galvanic Current on the positive polarity (4 to 7 minutes). For clients with extreme sensitivity, electrical modalities may be contraindicated.

**key ingredients**

- **UltraCalming™ Complex**: helps reduce sensitivity, irritation and inflammation.
- **Saccharomyces (Yeast) Lysate Extract**: stimulates oxygen consumption and combats irritation; helps in tissue regeneration.
- **Caffeine**: used to reduce redness by constricting capillaries.
- **Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B₅)**: has humectant properties and helps promote tissue repair.
- **Sodium Hyaluronate (Hyaluronic Acid) and Hydrolyzed Glycosaminoglycans**: a natural component of the skin that holds a thousand times its weight in water, maintaining optimum hydration levels of tissues.

**benefits**

- Delivers intense level of active ingredients to soothe and strengthen skin.
- Product continues to work even after the client leaves the treatment room.
- Product penetration may be enhanced when used in conjunction with Galvanic Current.
skin condition
Sensitized, reactive and recently resurfaced skin.

description
A soothing, calming masque that helps boost the immune function of ultra-sensitive, irritated skin. When mixed with water, a creamy consistency develops that is ideal for gentle application.

key ingredients
Colloidal Oatmeal: pharmaceutical-grade Oatmeal helps soothe irritated skin.

benefits
Relieves itching associated with eczema.
Helps to soothe skin rashes and irritation.
Can be used on eyes and lips.
Ideal for sun or wind-burned skin.

professional application
1. Press 6 to 10 drops of UltraCalming™ Complex onto the skin.
2. Mix approximately 1 to 2 scoops of Clinical Colloidal Oatmeal with a wooden spatula and warm water to form a smooth consistency. Apply with Fan Masque Brush in an even layer from forehead to neck. Include eye and lip area.
3. Steam for 10 to 15 minutes. Steam will promote the qualities of the active ingredients, help keep the masque hydrated and prevent setting for easier removal.
4. Loosen masque for easy removal and to avoid skin friction by spraying with a Dr. Lucas Pulverizer™ or Eco Spray customized with 6 to 10 drops of Calming Botanical Mixer. Remove masque gently with a warm steam towel customized with Calming Botanical Mixer or The Sponge Cloth.
5. Optional: Mix with 6 drops of Calming Botanical Mixer before applying to help soothe skin.
A common misconception is that acne only affects teenagers. But more than ever before, adults are suffering with oily and acneic skin conditions. Clinical studies indicate that between 40 and 55 percent of the adult population in the 20-40 age group are diagnosed with a low grade, persistent acne and oily skin. According to the Journal of American Academy of Dermatology, 54% of women older than age 25 have some facial acne, which is most likely attributed to hormonal fluctuations that trigger excess sebum resulting in acne. Acne arising in adulthood is more likely to be inflammatory, with fewer comedones than teenage acne, and with lesions predominantly located around the mouth, chin and jaw line. Likewise, adults often have sensitized skin, or a combination of skin conditions in addition to their acne, which makes treatment more challenging than treatment of teens who generally have a more resilient, uniform oily skin condition. In addition, adult cases of acne are often more persistent than teenage acne,
which can be particularly frustrating for those who were spared outbreaks as teenagers.

**What are the four main biochemical triggers that contribute to acne?**
The primary catalyst of adult acne is chronic stress. Balancing personal and professional responsibilities makes this generation of adults the most time-compressed generation in history. This contributes to chronic stress: the constant, continued and heightened level of stress that throws our adrenal glands into overdrive, which in turn can boost sebum production, setting the stage for acne development.

While stress creates the trigger for acne, there are four main factors that contribute to the development of acne: overactive sebaceous glands (the production of too much oil), dead skin cell accumulation, bacteria and inflammation.

**Overactive Sebaceous Glands**
Despite which form of acne is prevalent, it is known that sebum production or oil is the catalyst for the series of events that result in acne or breakouts. Often times, a client will not think they have even a mild form of acne and will attribute their skin condition to excess oiliness. As skin care professionals, we know that this excess sebum is often associated with enlarged pores, a tendency toward follicle congestion and an oily T-zone.

**Cell Accumulation and Bacteria**
In a normal follicle (Image A), dead surface cells are continually sloughed from the epidermal canal and are deposited at the surface of the skin. However, when acne is present, a proliferation of cells occurs at the neck of the follicle, accompanied by excess sebum that causes the cells to stick together along with bacteria (usually Propionibacterium acnes, which is also known as Corynebacterium acnes); the conglomeration of the sebum and cells leads to formation of an impaction plug that provides a nice anaerobic environment for the bacteria to thrive in. This process, whereby abnormal desquamation of sebaceous-follicle epithelium results in altered keratinization, is often called retention hyperkeratosis. This first stage impacted follicle is often referred to as a micro-comedone. Researchers have found that there are fewer lamellar granules in the Stratum Granulosum of acneic skin. As the lamellar granules contain the desquamation enzymes and lipids that comprise the barrier layer in the intercellular spaces, this could account for the accumulation of cells in the follicle canal. Likewise, acneic skin is more permeable around the sebaceous gland and follicle, which may lead to leakage and inflammation into surrounding tissues. Studies have shown that Linoleic Acid, an essential fatty acid that is a component of the barrier lipid layer, is indeed deficient in acneic clients. The bacteria in the follicle excrete a lipase enzyme to break down the sebum triglycerides into fatty acids and glycerol. The sebum is used as a food source and the free fatty acids are merely waste products that irritate the lining of the follicle. At this point, the disease may result in non-inflammatory lesions and simply produce closed comedones (whiteheads – Image B) which may turn into open comedones (blackheads – Image C) and expel their contents.

**Inflammation**
Inflamed lesions may also result, whereby the follicle wall ruptures forming a papule (Image D). If the break in the follicle is close to the surface, a pustule results (Image E). If it is deeper, a nodule forms. In some cases, a membrane entraps the infection and a cyst develops.

Regardless, Matrix Metalloproteinase...
(MMPs) enzymes are stimulated to help repair the damaged tissue and white blood cells invade the area: this is when inflammation sets in.

What can be done to help treat, clear and prevent adult acne?

In order to control acne, we must interrupt the degeneration of the follicle by affecting the four main contributing factors. The International Dermal Institute has researched several new ingredients that are extremely effective in controlling acne. We can classify these ingredients according to the problem that each specifically addresses (see Image F). By inhibiting the activity of overactive sebaceous glands, we not only eliminate the food source for the bacteria, but we also eliminate oily shine and create a more esthetically-pleasing appearance for the client. The following ingredients are known sebum-regulating agents: Nordihydroguaiaretic Acid, Niacinamide, Yeast Extract, Aesculus Hippocastanum (Horse Chestnut) Extract, Acrylates Copolymer (microsponges), Sarcosine and Zinc Gluconate.

To control cell accumulation we need to stimulate natural exfoliation superficially as well as in the follicle lining. By exfoliating to remove surface cells that have not been shed, we can help eliminate the impaction of follicles which triggers the early stages of comedone formation. The following are known exfoliating agents: Salicylic Acid, Lactic Acid, Sulfur and Papain.

By controlling bacteria on the skin’s surface and in the follicle, and the lipase activity, we can control the source of fatty acids that contribute to irritation. The following ingredients are known anti-bacterial agents: Benzoyl Peroxide, Spiraea Ulmaria Extract, Cinnamomum Zeylamium Bark Extract, Salicylic Acid, Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree) Oil, Zinc Gluconate, Zinc Sulfate, Melissa Officinalis (Balm Mint) Extract, Rosmarinus Officinalis (Rosemary) Extract, Sulfur and Sarcosine.

To help keep inflammation caused by adult acne under control, we must consider the application of topical anti-inflammatory repair agents, botanicals and humectants to help the healing process and soothe inflamed skin. The following are known anti-inflammatory and reparative agents: Camellia Sinensis (Green Tea), Panthenol, Camphor, Bisabolol, Allantoin, Echinacea Purpurea (Coneflower), Oat Extract and Glycyrrhiza Glabra (Licorice) Extract.

Dermalogica’s MediBac Clearing® system works to treat, clear and prevent adult acne while addressing the needs of adult skin. The MediBac Clearing® system controls acne without compromising skin’s integrity, which means skin is consistently clear and healthier. Each product, with its unique acne-fighting and clearing ingredients, is designed to be layered upon the skin to provide around-the-clock, maximum control of the four main factors that contribute to acne.
clearing skin wash

application
Following the removal of PreCleanse, work a pea-sized amount into a lather in wet hands. Apply to dampened face and throat, massaging in circular motions while concentrating on areas of congestion, breakouts and oiliness. Avoid eye area. Rinse thoroughly with warm water. Follow with Skin Purifying Wipes and prescribed MediBac Clearing® regimen.

professional application
1. Perform the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse.
   note:
   Upon beginning second cleanse with Clearing Skin Wash, steam may be used to facilitate the cleansing process by further softening the skin.
2. Lather Clearing Skin Wash and apply with a flowing effleurage, spreading movement over the entire face, throat and upper décolleté. Ensure slip-and-glide by combining with water customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer.
3. Damp sponges, steam towels or The Sponge Cloth customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer should be used to remove all traces of cleanser.

contraindications for use
Product contains Salicylic Acid and may irritate very sensitive skin. Discontinue use if client experiences undue redness or burning. Not for those who currently take acne medication. For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Keep out of reach of children.

key ingredients
Salicylic Acid: stimulates natural exfoliation, helping to clear impacted follicles and minimize acne formation.
Melissa Officinalis Leaf Extract: used for its anti-septic, analgesic and anti-bacterial properties; also aids in healing in soothing the skin.
Angelica Archangelica Extract: antibacterial agent with soothing properties.
Echinacea Purpurea Extract: has anti-bacterial and anti-inflammatory properties.
Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) Peel Extract: a natural source of Vitamin C; protects skin against damage and is used as an anti-inflammatory.
Chamomilla Recutita (Matricaria) Flower Extract: skin smoothing and anti-inflammatory flower extract.

benefits / top retailing points
Foaming cleanser clears away excess oil without stripping skin.
Synergistic combination of botanicals and Salicylic Acid help clear skin.
Soothing botanicals help calm inflamed, irritated skin.
Helps prevent future breakouts.
**skin purifying wipes**

**top products to prescribe**

- Clearing Skin Wash
- Oil Control Lotion
- Sebum Clearing Masque

**application**

Lift tab to open. Remove a wipe. Apply over face, back or other oily areas after cleansing and throughout the day as a hygienic touch-up. Reseal label tab to prevent wipes from drying.

**contraindications**

Product contains Salicylic Acid and may irritate very sensitive skin. Discontinue use if client experiences undue redness or burning. Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed. For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Keep out of reach of children.

**benefits / top retailing points**

Provides anti-bacterial protection to the skin’s surface to help prevent future breakouts.

May be used after cleansing or during the day to remove oil and keep skin fresh.

Convenient pack goes everywhere, making it perfect for travel, office, gym and outdoor enthusiasts, and teens who are on the go.

**key ingredients**

- **Salicylic Acid**: stimulates natural exfoliation, helping to clear impacted follicles and minimize acne formation.

- **Melissa Officinalis (Balm Mint) Leaf, Echinacea Purpurea (Coneflower) and Camphor**: extracts that purify and soothe irritated skin.

- **Witch Hazel**: a natural astringent. Helps keep skin clean and fresh.
skin condition
Acneic and breakout-prone skin, or areas of excess oil production.

description
A medicated topical treatment that clears breakouts, reduces congestion and controls shine. Silicones melt gently into skin to help diminish fine lines and smooth skin texture. Niacinamide, Zinc Gluconate, Yeast Extract and Biotin purify and inhibit overactive sebaceous activity while Salicylic Acid clears congested follicles to minimize future breakouts.

top products to prescribe
• Clearing Skin Wash
• Oil Control Lotion
• Special Clearing Booster

clearing mattifier

application
After cleansing in the morning, apply sparingly to areas prone to excess oil production or breakouts. Follow with Oil Control Lotion or prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer. For best skin clearing results, use daily in the morning, and use Overnight Clearing Gel in the evening.

contraindications
Product contains Salicylic Acid and may irritate very sensitive skin. Discontinue use if client experiences undue redness or burning. Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed. For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Keep out of reach of children.

key ingredients
Salicylic Acid: stimulates natural exfoliation, helping to clear impacted follicles and minimize acne formation.

Retinyl Palmitate (Vitamin A): helps increase skin elasticity and helps reverse the signs of prematurely-induced photoaging.

Camellia Oleifera (Green Tea), Ammonium Glycyrrhizate (Licorice) and Chamomile Recutita (Matricaria): soothe and calm inflammation.

Niacinamide, Yeast Extract, Aesculus Hippocastanum (Horse Chestnut), Ammonium Glycryrrhizate (Licorice), Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B) and Caffeine: act as bioregulators of sebaceous secretions in skin, reducing oil and shine.

Cinnamomum Zeylanicum Bark Extract: a patent-pending Cinnamon Bark blend inhibits bacterial lipid metabolism and degradation of enzymes while eliminating bacteria, providing astringent properties and helping to reduce comedones for clearer skin.

Vitis Vinifera (Grape) Seed, Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B) and Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E): condition and provide critical defense against free radical damage.

Silicones: melt gently into skin to help diminish fine lines and smooth skin texture.

benefits / top retailing points
Smoothes skin texture and diminishes fine lines while providing superior shine control.

Glides over skin easily, and is a great primer before make-up application.

Inhibits overactive sebaceous activity.

Exfoliates impaction plugs and clears congested follicles to minimize future breakout activity.

Soothes irritation and inflammation associated with breakouts.
Skin Condition
Acneic and breakout-prone skin, or areas of excess oil production.

Description
A hydrating, oil-free, feather-light lotion containing microspheres to help absorb even more oil on skin’s surface and maintain an all-day matte finish. Active sebum regulating complex helps control oil production while Enantia Chlorantha Bark Extract helps reduce oily shine.

Top Products to Prescribe
• Clearing Mattifier
• Concealing Spot Treatment
• Sebum Clearing Masque

Application
After cleansing with Clearing Skin Wash and toning with Skin Purifying Wipes, apply with light, upward strokes. May be re-applied as needed throughout the day. Can be applied over or mixed with Special Clearing Booster or prescribed Dermalogica Concentrated Booster for skin condition-specific results.

Professional Application
1. Following the application of Multi-Active Toner and MediBac Clearing® Complex, apply Oil Control Lotion evenly to areas of excessive oiliness.
2. May be customized with prescribed Dermalogica Concentrated Booster.
3. Follow with prescribed Daylight Defense.

Contraindications for Use
Product contains Salicylic Acid and may irritate very sensitive skin. Discontinue use if client experiences undue redness or burning. Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed. For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Keep out of reach of children.

Key Ingredients
- **Salicylic Acid**: stimulates natural exfoliation, helping to clear impacted follicles and minimize acne formation.
- **Enantia Chlorantha Bark**: an extract that helps regulate sebum to reduce oily surface shine.
- **Niacinamide, Yeast Extract, Aesculus Hippocastanum (Horse Chestnut), Ammonium Glycyrrhizate (Licorice), Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B₅)**: regulate sebum production and soothe inflammation.
- **Zinc Gluconate and Caffeine**: help regulate sebum production and help control bacterial metabolism of sebum-reducing inflammation.
- **Vinyl Dimethicone / Methicone Silsesquioxane Crosspolymer**: oil absorbers that absorb excess surface oils on skin.

Benefits / Top Retailing Points
- Absorbs excess oil and eliminates shine while providing an all-day matte finish.
- Regulates sebum production.
- Soothes irritated skin while moisturizing.
- Helps eliminate congestion and prevent future breakouts.
overnight clearing gel

**Skin Condition**
Acneic and breakout-prone skin.

**Description**
An overnight treatment that helps clear skin, calm inflammation and prevent future breakouts by reducing excess sebum, removing impaction plugs and eliminating bacteria.

**Top Products to Prescribe**
- Skin Purifying Wipes
- Concealing Spot Treatment
- Sebum Clearing Masque

**Application**
At night, apply a thin layer all over cleansed face or affected areas and allow to absorb. In the morning, wash off with Clearing Skin Wash, then, for maximum treatment results, apply Clearing Mattifier to breakout-prone areas. Use nightly as needed.

**Contraindications**
Product contains Salicylic Acid and may irritate very sensitive skin. Discontinue use if client experiences undue redness or burning. Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed. For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Keep out of reach of children.

**Key Ingredients**
- **Salicylic Acid:** stimulates natural exfoliation, helping to clear impacted follicles and minimize acne formation.
- **Niacinamide, Biotin, Zinc Gluconate, Yeast Extract, Caffeine and Nordihydroguaiaretic Acid:** unique blend inhibits overactive sebaceous gland activity, purifies to promote skin clarity and helps calm irritation brought on by breakouts.
- **Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree) Leaf:** A natural antiseptic that helps inhibit bacteria while stimulating skin’s natural anti-bacterial agents. Also aids in skin healing and soothing skin.
- **Spiraea Ulmaria:** an extract that helps inhibit bacteria by stimulating the skin’s natural anti-bacterial agents.
- **Camellia Oleifera (Green Tea) Leaf:** helps soothe irritation.
- **Hyaluronic Acid:** provides increased hydration and improved elasticity.

**Benefits / Top Retailing Points**
- Removes impaction plug from follicle to help prevent future breakouts and relieve congestion.
- Helps regulate sebum production.
- May be applied over the face or to zones experiencing breakouts and congestion.
skin condition
Topical treatment of breakouts.

description
This 5% Benzoyl Peroxide concentrate, fortified with Zinc Sulfate, Tea Tree and Sage, eliminates bacteria while helping to accelerate breakout clearing.

top products to prescribe
• Clearing Skin Wash
• Oil Control Lotion
• Overnight Clearing Gel

application
Before moisturizing, apply as a spot treatment to problem areas and allow to dry. Can also be mixed with Oil Control Lotion or prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer to boost clearing benefits. Apply every 6 to 8 hours directly to affected area as needed until breakout clears.

contraindications
Benzoyl Peroxide may irritate very sensitive skin. Do not apply directly over entire face. Discontinue use if client experiences undue redness or burning. Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed. For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Keep out of reach of children.

key ingredients
Benzoyl Peroxide and Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree): eliminate breakout-causing bacteria in the follicles and help clear skin.

Calendula Officinalis Flower and Chamomilla Recuittita (Matricaria) Flower: botanical extracts that help treat acne while soothing irritation.

Zinc Sulfate: helps eliminate bacteria and regulate sebum production.

benefits / top retailing points
Quickly dries breakouts.
Calming botanicals help soothe redness and aggravation associated with breakouts.
Helps regulate sebum production to help control future breakouts.
concealing spot treatment

**skin condition**
Topical treatment of breakouts.

**description**
An intense treatment with a natural-looking tint ideal for daytime coverage of breakouts. Sulfur and Zinc Oxide quickly target, conceal and help clear breakouts. An amazing alternative for those who prefer treatment products free of Benzoyl Peroxide.

**top products to prescribe**
- Clearing Skin Wash
- Overnight Clearing Gel
- Sebum Clearing Masque

**application**
Dot onto finger and apply to afflicted area. Let stand for five seconds, then pat until blended in. Use over Oil Control Lotion or prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer. Use until breakout has cleared.

**contraindications**
Product contains Sulfur. If you suspect your client could be sensitive or sensitized to Sulfur and may respond adversely, perform a patch test on a small area behind the ear or inner arm (inside elbow) to evaluate skin response and potential for irritant dermatitis.

Product contains Salicylic Acid and may irritate very sensitive skin. Discontinue use if client experiences undue redness or burning. Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

**key ingredients**

**Sulfur and Zinc Oxide:** help clear skin by eliminating bacteria associated with acne while clearing excess oil and congestion in the follicle.

**Salicylic Acid:** stimulates natural exfoliation, helping to clear impacted follicles and minimize acne formation.

**Niacinamide, Zinc Gluconate, Yeast Extract, Cinnamonum Zeylanicum (Cinnamon) Bark, Caffeine and Biotin:** a unique blend that helps purify and inhibit overactive sebaceous gland activity while soothing irritation.

**benefits / top retailing points**

A spot treatment that quickly dries breakouts.

Free of Benzoyl Peroxide – an ingredient commonly used to treat breakouts that can cause sensitivity or reactions.

Ideal for daytime use: natural tint works to conceal breakouts while they are being treated.

Helps eliminate bacteria associated with acne while clearing congestion to help prevent future breakouts.
**skin condition**
Acneic and breakout-prone skin.

**description**
A cooling, refining and deep-cleaning Kaolin and Bentonite clay masque that purifies, absorbs excess surface oil and helps prevent breakouts.

**top products to prescribe**
- Clearing Skin Wash
- Clearing Mattifier
- Concealing Spot Treatment

**application**
Apply a smooth layer to cleansed face and throat avoiding the eye area. Leave on for 7 to 10 minutes, then rinse thoroughly with warm water. May also be used exclusively on the T-zone. Apply 3 times per week. Follow with Skin Purifying Wipes, Oil Control Lotion and prescribed MediBac Clearing® regimen.

**professional application**
1. Press 6 to 10 drops of MediBac Clearing® Complex onto skin.
2. Using a Fan Masque Brush, apply a thin, even layer to face and throat, avoiding the eye area. May also be applied to the T-zone only.
3. Remove after 10 minutes with damp sponges or a steam towel customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer.

**contraindications**
Product contains Salicylic Acid and may irritate very sensitive skin. Discontinue use if client experiences undue redness or burning. Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

**key ingredients**
- **Salicylic Acid**: stimulates natural exfoliation, helping to clear impacted follicles and minimize acne formation.
- **Bentonite and Kaolin**: clays that help absorb excess oil, refine pores and clear congestion.
- **Spiraea Ulmaria**: an extract that helps inhibit bacteria by stimulating the skin’s natural anti-bacterial agents.
- **Niacinamide, Yeast Extract, Aesculus Hippocastanum (Horse Chestnut) Seed, Dipotassium Glycyrrhizate (Licorice) and Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B₅)**: a unique blend that regulates sebum production and soothes inflammation.
- **Zinc Gluconate and Caffeine**: help regulate sebum production and help control bacterial metabolism of sebum-reducing inflammation.
- **Avena Sativa (Oat) Kernel, Bisabolol and Dipotassium Glycyrrhizate (Licorice)**: help soothe irritated skin.

- **Cinnamomum Zeylanicum Bark**: a patent-pending Cinnamon Bark blend inhibits bacterial lipid metabolism and degradation of enzymes while eliminating bacteria, providing astringent properties and helping to reduce comedones for clearer skin.

**benefits / top retailing points**
Imparts a cooling sensation on skin that helps soothe aggravation brought on by breakouts.

Addresses and controls the four factors that contribute to acne: overactive sebaceous glands, cell accumulation, bacteria and inflammation.

Absorbs excess oil and refines skin texture.

 Helps purify skin while strengthening the follicle membrane wall to help control inflammation associated with follicle eruptions.
Intensify the effectiveness of your clients’ prescribed MediBac Clearing® home care regimen with MediBac Clearing® professional products. These products are designed to help customize the Skin Treatment when control of acneic or breakout-prone skin is required.
## skin exfoliant system

### skin condition
Skin with excess oil production, skin prone to breakouts.

### description
A two-part exfoliation system comprised of an enzyme powder base and a liquid hydroxy acid activator. **Skin Exfoliant System** can be used as the peeling process in a professional treatment or offered as a series of peeling treatments. If used as part of a regular skin treatment, do not use in conjunction with any other peel or exfoliant.

### professional application

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>In mixing bowl provided, mix 1 scoop (tablespoon) of Enzymatic Base, Part A with 1 teaspoon Acidic Activator, Part B until creamy smooth.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Apply using Fan Masque Brush, working carefully around the eye area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Leave on the skin for 10 minutes; the exfoliant will dry and set. Do not place under steam, unless the skin is sensitive, as steam will accelerate the exfoliation process by making the product neutralize more rapidly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Rinse off thoroughly with sponges and tepid water, or a steam towel customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### optional:
1. See page 59 for directions on how to customize Skin Exfoliant System with Exfoliant Accelerator 35.
2. For an alkaline enzyme-based exfoliant prior to performing extractions, mix 1 scoop Enzymatic Base, Part A with 1 teaspoon Scaling Fluid.
3. For an enzyme-based exfoliant, mix 1 scoop Enzymatic Base, Part A with 1 teaspoon of water and apply with a Fan Masque Brush. Process under steam to activate enzymes for 10 minutes. Rinse off thoroughly with sponges and tepid water, or a steam towel customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer.

### contraindications
Clients using Retin-A, Renova, Adapalene or any other exfoliating product must discontinue use at least 2 weeks before undergoing this treatment. Clients who are taking Isotretinoin (sometimes marketed as Accutane), or have taken Isotretinoin within the past six months, should not receive any exfoliation treatments. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

### key ingredients
- **Enzymatic Base, Part A:** contains active enzymes of Bromelain and Papain to help digest the protein of dead skin cells, leaving the skin’s surface smooth and refined.
- **Acidic Activator, Part B:** has a base of Lactic Acid, Salicylic Acid and Sulfur to gently detach surface cells, stimulating new cell renewal.

### benefits
- Gives visible results after one treatment but is gentle enough for frequent use.
- Provides a professional strength exfoliation system that is non-abrasive and active enough for resistant skin conditions.
- This combination of powder and liquid ensures that the ingredients are activated only when ready for application.
- Self-neutralizing action ensures a safe exfoliation.

### professional only
- Contains:
  - Enzymatic Base, Part A
  - Acidic Activator, Part B
  - Fan Masque Brush
  - Mixing Cup
medibac clearing® masque system

professional application

1. Press 6 to 10 drops of MediBac Clearing® Complex onto skin before applying masque.
3. Customize with 1 to 2 drops of Purifying Botanical Mixer (optional).
4. Apply with Fan Masque Brush to face and throat, or apply to the T-zone only. Avoid eye area.
5. Remove after 10 minutes with sponges or steam towels customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer.

optional:
Multi-Active Toner or Eco Spray may be used to help soften the masque prior to removal with sponge or a steam towel.

contraindications

Product contains Sulfur. If you suspect your client could be sensitive or sensitized to Sulfur and may respond adversely, perform a patch test on a small area behind the ear or inner arm (inside elbow) to evaluate skin response and potential for irritant dermatitis.

Product contains Salicylic Acid and may irritate very sensitive skin. Discontinue use if client experiences undue redness or burning. Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

key ingredients

Sulfur: clears the skin by eliminating bacteria associated with acne and by clearing excess oil and congestion in the follicle.

Activated Charcoal: a natural skin purifier; helps absorb oils and impurities.

Diatomaceous Earth and Bentonite: clays that absorb excess sebum.

Glycyrrhiza Glabra (Licorice) and Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B5): help calm, condition and neutralize irritation associated with the most mild to the most severe acne conditions.

benefits

MediBac Clearing® Masque – Part 1 is a unique Sulfur and Charcoal powder mask that regulates sebum production and helps eliminate bacteria associated with breakouts.

MediBac Clearing® Masque – Part 2 contains soothing Camphor, antiseptic Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree) Oil and hydrating Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B5) to help soothe and calm skin.
oil free massage

**skin condition**
All skin conditions, especially skin with breakouts and excess oil production.

**description**
A silky, water-soluble and oil-free massage medium fortified with calming Lavender to provide long-lasting slip-and-glide while purifying skin and controlling sebum production.

**professional application**

1. Dispense 2 pumps into the palm of hand or a small mixing cup.
2. Add 6 to 10 drops of **Purifying Botanical Mixer** and mix together.
3. Rub between palms and fingertips and apply to skin using massage movements, i.e., Dermalogica Pressure Point Massage.
4. Remove with a warm steam towel or sponges.

**optional:**
Press 6 to 10 drops of **Purifying Botanical Mixer** onto skin prior to **Oil Free Massage**.

**key ingredients**

- **Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender):** a naturally antiseptic extract. Helps soothe and purify skin.
- **Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B₅):** aids in skin repair and hydration.
- **Niacinamide, Zinc Gluconate, Yeast Extract, Aesculus Hippocastanum (Horse Chestnut) Seed and Biotin:** unique complex that helps regulate sebum production in oily and acneic skin conditions.

**benefits**

- Silky, oil-free fluid provides the perfect massage medium.
- Helps purify and calm skin.
- Ideal for oil-phobic clients, and clients experiencing breakouts and congestion.
mediBac clearing® complex

skin condition
Acneic and breakout-prone skin.

description
A lightweight medicated treatment that penetrates deeply to treat the underlying causes of acne. This professional-use-only product clears congested follicles, regulates sebum production, soothes irritated skin and helps eliminate bacteria to promote skin clarity.

professional application
1. Press 6 to 10 drops onto skin before applying MediBac Clearing® Masque System or Sebum Clearing Masque.

optional:
Additional MediBac Clearing® Complex can be pressed onto skin before applying Oil Control Lotion or prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer.

optional:
For increased product penetration perform iontophoresis for 4 to 7 minutes with MediBac Clearing® Complex under Colloidal Masque Base.

contraindications for use
Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

key ingredients
Salicylic Acid: stimulates natural exfoliation, helping to clear impacted follicles and minimize acne formation.

Niacinamide, Yeast Extract, Aesculus Hippocastanum (Horse Chestnut) Seed, Ammonium Glycyrrhizate (Licorice) and Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B5): regulate sebum production, provide astringent properties to the skin and soothe inflammation.


benefits
A medicated treatment product that clears follicles of congestion and promotes long-term follicle clarity.

Regulates excess sebum production, soothes inflammation and helps eliminate bacteria.

Product penetration may be enhanced when used in conjunction with galvanic current on positive polarity.
Sunlight is without a doubt your skin’s worst enemy, bombarding it on a daily basis with the UVA and UVB rays that promote premature aging and skin cancer. Statistics show that one in six individuals will develop skin cancer, and 90% of these cancers are the direct result of ultraviolet (UV) radiation from the sun. In fact, a severe sunburn before the age of eighteen exponentially increases your skin cancer risk, making a comprehensive program of sun protection vitally important for clients of all ages.

Dermalogica Daylight Defense is comprised of formulations that provide an invisible shield against UVA and UVB rays while working with each skin condition to improve its overall appearance and health. Research has found that antioxidant vitamins are as important as sunscreens when defending skin from the aging and burning effects of damaging UV light and free radicals. For this reason, four of our Daylight Defense formulations contain exclusive UV Smart Booster Technology, a customized microcapsule that safeguards antioxidant vitamins C and E, then bursts open upon contact with UV rays, releasing the vitamins for maximum free radical protection. We offer a choice of two sunscreen technologies: chemical-based formulations that protect against UVA and UVB rays by absorbing them, and physical sunscreens that actually reflect damaging rays.
**Skin Condition**
Skin prone to excess oil production or breakouts.

**Description**
An ultra-sheer, weightless lotion that provides UVA and UVB protection while absorbing excess oil from skin's surface, helping to maintain an all-day matte finish without a powdery residue.

**Top Products to Prescribe**
- Dermal Clay Cleanser
- Skin Prep Scrub
- Skin Refining Masque

**Application**
After cleansing and toning, apply evenly and liberally to face, preferably 30 minutes prior to sun exposure. Use after or instead of a daily moisturizer for year-round protection against sun damage and daylight exposure. For continuous protection, apply regularly. Reapply as needed after swimming or exercise.

**Warnings**
For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Do not use on infants under 6 months old.

**Active Ingredients**
Chemical sunscreens:
- Octinoxate
- Octisalate
Physical sunscreens:
- Titanium Dioxide

**Benefits / Top Retailing Points**
Weightless, oil-free formula is perfect for oil-phobic clients.

**Key Ingredients**
Titanium Dioxide, Octinoxate and Octisalate: ultra-fine porcelain particles of Titanium Dioxide (a physical sunscreen) combine with chemical sunscreens to provide optimum UVA and UVB protection.

**UV Smart Booster Technology**: an encapsulated complex of antioxidant vitamins C and E; scavenges UV-induced free radicals while enhancing photoprotection.

**Corn Starch and Vinyl Dimethicone/Methicone Silsesquioxane Crosspolymer**: microspheres that absorb excess surface oils on skin.

**Camellia Sinensis Leaf Extract**: from Green Tea; a powerful antioxidant with anti-inflammatory properties.
super sensitive faceblock spf30

application
After cleansing and toning, apply evenly and liberally to face, preferably 30 minutes prior to sun exposure. Use after or instead of a daily moisturizer for year-round protection against sun damage and daylight exposure. For continuous protection, apply regularly. Reapply as needed after swimming or exercise.

warnings
For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Do not use on infants under 6 months old.

active ingredients
Physical sunscreens:
• Titanium Dioxide
• Zinc Oxide

key ingredients
Titanium Dioxide and Zinc Oxide: microscopic dispersions provide optimum protection against UVA and UVB exposure.

UV Smart Booster Technology: an encapsulated complex of antioxidant vitamins C and E; scavenges UV-induced free radicals while enhancing photoprotection.

Dipotassium Glycyrrhizate (Licorice) and Camellia Sinensis (Green Tea): extracts that contain soothing isoflavonoid polyphenols to calm irritation.

Hyaluronic Acid: provides increased hydration and improved elasticity.

Dimethicone: a skin conditioning silicone that protects and reinforces barrier lipids which are often compromised in sensitized skin conditions.

Lavandula Hybrida Oil: essential oil hybrid related to the Lavender plant; anti-inflammatory properties. Well suited to skin prone to dermatitis and allergies.

benefits / top retailing points
Formulated specifically for sensitized skin using only natural mineral UV protectors (no chemical sunscreens) to protect against UVA and UVB photodamage.

Antioxidants and botanical extracts help guard against premature aging and irritation.

Provides optimal hydration while reinforcing the skin’s natural barrier lipids.

Ideal for people who experience irritation from chemical sunscreen ingredients.
extra rich faceblock
spf30

application
After cleansing and toning, apply evenly and liberally to face, preferably 30 minutes prior to sun exposure. Use as a daily moisturizer for year-round protection against sun damage and daylight exposure. For continuous protection, apply regularly. Reapply as needed after swimming or exercise.

warnings
For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Do not use on infants under 6 months old.

active ingredients
Chemical sunscreens:
• Homosalate
• Octisalate
• Oxybenzone
Physical sunscreens:
• Zinc Oxide

benefits / top retailing points
Nourishing, emollient cream provides superior hydration and moisturization.
Uses the latest sunscreen technology to protect against UVA and UVB photodamage.

key ingredients
Homosalate, Octinoxate, Octisalate, Oxybenzone and Zinc Oxide: Physical and chemical sunscreens that provide optimum UVA and UVB protection.

UV Smart Booster Technology: an encapsulated complex of antioxidant vitamins C and E; scavenges UV-induced free radicals while enhancing photoprotection.

Borago Officinalis (Borage) Seed, Oenothera Biennis (Evening Primrose) and Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E): help maintain smooth skin texture and retain moisture levels.

Hyaluronic Acid, Urea and Algae Extract: help maintain hydration.

Palmitoyl Tetrapeptide and Palmitoyl Oligopeptide: trigger collagen production, helping to increase firmness and restore elasticity.

skin condition
Chronically dry and prematurely-aging skin.

description
An ultra-emollient, nourishing moisturizer and superior sunscreen in one formula. Chemical and physical sunscreens protect against UVA and UVB rays without over-drying skin.

top products to prescribe
• Skin Hydrating Masque
• Daily Resurfacer
• Power Rich™

1.7 Fl. Oz. / 50 mL
ultra sensitive faceblock
spf25

application
Apply liberally to the face, 30 minutes prior to sun exposure. For continuous protection, reapply regularly, especially after swimming and exercise. May be applied under make-up or over prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer.

warnings
For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Do not use on infants under 6 months old.

active ingredients
Physical sunscreens:
• Titanium Dioxide

key ingredients
Titanium Dioxide: technically-advanced, ultra-fine porcelain particles reflect the sun’s damaging rays.

Vitis Vinifera (Grape) Seed and Camellia Sinensis (Green Tea): soothing botanical extracts that provide anti-enzyme and antioxidant protection.

Magnesium Ascorbyl Phosphate (Vitamin C) and Tocopherol (Vitamin E): antioxidants that improve skin smoothness and softness, and help control damage caused by free radicals.

Melissa Officinalis (Balm Mint) Leaf and Echinacea Purpurea (Coneflower): help calm and soothe the skin.

Sodium PCA: a moisture-binding protein that acts as a humectant to allow for more effective moisture absorption.

Retinyl Palmitate (Vitamin A): helps stimulate collagen and reverse the signs of prematurely-induced photoaging. Helps to increase skin elasticity while enhancing water barrier properties.

Iron Oxides: provide a natural tint to formula.

benefits / top retailing points
A rich facial sunscreen formulated especially for sensitive skin with non-chemical sunscreens.

Iron Oxides provide a natural tint.

Tinted formula includes natural humectants to help protect against moisture loss and blend easily on the face.

Antioxidant vitamins and soothing botanicals help guard skin against premature aging and irritation.
skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
A sunscreen supplement specifically formulated to add full spectrum protection to your favorite moisturizer or make-up.

top products to prescribe
• MultiVitamin BodyBlock SPF20
• Daily Microfoliant®
• Daily Resurfacer

application
For daily sun protection, mix equal amounts of Solar Defense Booster SPF30 with prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer or Treatment Foundation in palm of hand. Apply to face in smooth, upward strokes. May also be applied directly to the face for maximum SPF30 protection. When mixed, SPF is slightly diluted to 15 to 17.

professional application
1. Apply following prescribed Dermalogica Toner. May be mixed with prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer or used alone.

warnings
For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Do not use on infants under 6 months old.

active ingredients
Chemical sunscreens:
• Avobenzone
• Octinoxate
• Octisalate
• Oxybenzone

key ingredients
Avobenzone, Octinoxate, Octisalate and Oxybenzone: chemical sunscreens that provide optimum UVA and UVB protection.

Vitis Vinifera (Grape) Seed and Camellia Sinensis (Green Tea): soothing botanical extracts that provide anti-enzyme and antioxidant protection.

Magnesium Ascorbyl Phosphate (Vitamin C) and Tocopherol (Vitamin E): antioxidants that improve skin smoothness and softness, and help control damage caused by free radicals.

benefits / top retailing points
Boost the UV-defense of your prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer or Treatment Foundation by mixing equal parts together.

Highly-active botanical extracts and vitamins help scavenge free radicals, helping to combat premature aging.

May also be used alone for maximum SPF30 protection.
**skin condition**
All skin conditions, especially prematurely-aging skin.

**description**
An intensely-nourishing sunscreen and body moisturizer that treats areas prone to aging while blocking damaging UVA and UVB rays. The fast-absorbing formula instantly hydrates while forming a velvety, non-greasy layer on skin.

**top products to prescribe**
- Extra Rich FaceBlock SPF30
- MultiVitamin Power Firm
- MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque

**application**
Apply liberally and evenly to skin, preferably 30 minutes prior to sun exposure. Pay special attention to commonly exposed areas, such as the hands. For continuous protection, apply regularly and reapply as needed after swimming and exercise. Use daily as a body lotion for year-round protection against sun damage.

**warnings**
For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Do not use on infants under 6 months old.

**active ingredients**
Chemical sunscreens:
- Avobenzone
- Octinoxate
- Octisalate
- Oxybenzone

**benefits / top retailing points**
Uses the latest sunscreen technology to protect against UVA and UVB photodamage.

Non-greasy, non-sticky formula.

**key ingredients**
Avobenzone, Octinoxate, Octisalate and Oxybenzone: chemical sunscreens that provide optimum UVA and UVB protection.

Butyropermum Parkii (Shea Butter), Oenothera Biennis (Evening Primrose), Glycolipids and Hyaluronic Acid: help maintain hydration and smooth skin.

**UV Smart Booster Technology:** an encapsulated complex of antioxidant vitamins C and E; scavenges UV-induced free radicals while enhancing photoprotection.

**Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B₅):** aids in skin repair and hydration.
skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
Quickly mist on very water resistant sunscreen (up to 80 minutes) for instant full-spectrum protection. Formulated with the latest sunscreen technology, this S.D. alcohol-free spray absorbs rapidly to provide an invisible full-body shield against damaging UVA and UVB rays.

top products to prescribe
• Solar Shield SPF15
• Solar Defense Booster SPF30
• Sheer Tint Moisture SPF15 and Sheer Moisture SPF15

waterblock solar spray spf30

application
Apply evenly and liberally to skin 30 minutes prior to sun exposure. For continuous protection, apply regularly and reapply as needed after swimming or exercise.

warnings
For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Do not use on infants under 6 months old.

active ingredients
Chemical sunscreens:
• Homosalate
• Octinoxate
• Octisalate
• Octocrylene
• Oxybenzone

key ingredients
Homosalate, Octinoxate, Octisalate, Octocrylene and Oxybenzone: chemical sunscreens that provide optimum UVA and UVB protection.

Ascorbyl Palmitate (Vitamin C) and Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E): antioxidants that improve skin smoothness and softness, and help control damage caused by free radicals.

Retinol Palmitate (Vitamin A): helps increase skin elasticity and helps reverse the signs of prematurely-induced photoaging.

benefits / top retailing points
Very water resistant formula (for up to 80 minutes) maintains SPF protection, even during activities or exposure to water.

Easy-to-use spray-on formula absorbs quickly, creating a full-body shield against damaging UVA and UVB rays.

Ideal for outdoor enthusiasts.

application
Apply evenly and liberally to skin 30 minutes prior to sun exposure. For continuous protection, apply regularly and reapply as needed after swimming or exercise.

warnings
For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Do not use on infants under 6 months old.

active ingredients
Chemical sunscreens:
• Homosalate
• Octinoxate
• Octisalate
• Octocrylene
• Oxybenzone

key ingredients
Homosalate, Octinoxate, Octisalate, Octocrylene and Oxybenzone: chemical sunscreens that provide optimum UVA and UVB protection.

Ascorbyl Palmitate (Vitamin C) and Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E): antioxidants that improve skin smoothness and softness, and help control damage caused by free radicals.

Retinol Palmitate (Vitamin A): helps increase skin elasticity and helps reverse the signs of prematurely-induced photoaging.

benefits / top retailing points
Very water resistant formula (for up to 80 minutes) maintains SPF protection, even during activities or exposure to water.

Easy-to-use spray-on formula absorbs quickly, creating a full-body shield against damaging UVA and UVB rays.

Ideal for outdoor enthusiasts.
solar defense wipes
spf15

application
Lift tab to open. Unfold one towelette and gently wipe evenly over face and body 30 minutes prior to sun exposure. Re-seal pouch for freshness. For continuous protection, apply regularly and reapply as needed after swimming or exercise.

warnings
For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Do not use on infants under 6 months old.

active ingredients
Chemical sunscreens:
• Octinoxate
• Oxybenzone

key ingredients
Octinoxate and Oxybenzone: chemical sunscreens that provide optimum UVA and UVB protection.

Vitis Vinifera (Grape) Seed and Camellia Sinensis (Green Tea): soothing botanical extracts that provide anti-enzyme and antioxidant protection.

Melissa Officinalis (Balm Mint) Leaf and Echinacea Purpurea (Coneflower): help calm and soothe the skin.

Magnesium Ascorbyl Phosphate (Vitamin C) and Tocopherol (Vitamin E): antioxidants that improve skin smoothness and softness, and help control damage caused by free radicals.

benefits / top retailing points
Convenient travel pack goes anywhere and allows for frequent touch-ups in hard-to-reach areas.

Ideal for children and outdoor enthusiasts.

Provides very water resistant protection.

Antioxidant vitamins help protect against premature aging while botanicals guard against skin irritation.
**skin condition**
All skin conditions.

**description**
An easy-to-use sunscreen stick that provides very water resistant protection.

**top products to prescribe**
- Solar Defense Booster SPF30
- Solar Defense Wipes SPF15
- Body Hydrating Cream

**application**
Apply 30 minutes prior to sun exposure. For continuous protection, reapply regularly, especially after swimming and exercise. May be worn under or over lipstick.

**warnings**
For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Do not use on infants under 6 months old.

**active ingredients**
Chemical sunscreens:
- Octinoxate
- Octisalate
- Oxybenzone

**key ingredients**
**Octinoxate, Octisalate and Oxybenzone:** chemical sunscreens that provide optimum UVA and UVB protection.

**Bisabolol, Menthol and Citrus Grandis (Grapefruit):** soothing oils to help calm and relieve skin.

**Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E):** an antioxidant that, when formulated with sunscreen agents, enhances protection against UV-induced sunburn and free radicals. Also helps condition and soothe inflamed skin.

**benefits / top retailing points**
Provides portable, easy-to-use SPF15 sun protection.

**Shields sensitive areas during swimming with very water resistant protection.**

**Botanical extracts combine with natural moisturizers to help soothe and hydrate skin.**

**application**
Apply 30 minutes prior to sun exposure. For continuous protection, reapply regularly, especially after swimming and exercise. May be worn under or over lipstick.

**warnings**
For external use only, not to be swallowed. Avoid contact with eyes. If contact occurs, flush thoroughly with water. If irritation develops, discontinue use. Do not use on infants under 6 months old.

**active ingredients**
Chemical sunscreens:
- Octinoxate
- Octisalate
- Oxybenzone

**key ingredients**
**Octinoxate, Octisalate and Oxybenzone:** chemical sunscreens that provide optimum UVA and UVB protection.

**Bisabolol, Menthol and Citrus Grandis (Grapefruit):** soothing oils to help calm and relieve skin.

**Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E):** an antioxidant that, when formulated with sunscreen agents, enhances protection against UV-induced sunburn and free radicals. Also helps condition and soothe inflamed skin.

**benefits / top retailing points**
Provides portable, easy-to-use SPF15 sun protection.

**Shields sensitive areas during swimming with very water resistant protection.**

**Botanical extracts combine with natural moisturizers to help soothe and hydrate skin.**
skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
An incredibly soothing treatment balm that helps to repair damage from exposure to UV sunlight as it helps to cool sunburn and reduce discomfort.

top products to prescribe
• Skin Hydrating Booster
• Multi-Active Toner
• Solar Defense Booster SPF30

application
Apply a generous amount over previously sun-exposed areas of the face and body. Keep product away from the eyes. Repeat application on sensitized areas, as necessary, for maximum skin comfort.

key ingredients

Japanese Alder: scavenges free radicals and accelerates repair of UV-induced DNA damage.

Algae Extract, Hyaluronic Acid and Glycolipids: restore lost moisture to further accelerate the recovery process.

Eugenia Caryophyllus (Clove), Zanthoxylum Alatum, (Szechwan Pepper), Dipotassium Glycyrrhizate (Licorice), Artemisia Vulgaris (Mugwort), Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender), Cucumis Sativus (Cucumber), Chamomilla Recuitita (Chamomile) and Yucca Schidigera (Yucca): a unique blend that helps reduce irritation, redness and pain induced by sunburn.

benefits / top retailing points

Provides instant comfort and naturally reduces the pain associated with overexposure.

Makes a soothing post-waxing balm that cools and helps minimize redness.

Helps to repair sun-related DNA damage.

Moisturizes the skin to help shorten recovery time.

Calming extracts soothe and refresh.
Skin health is important for your entire body – which is why Dermalogica has Body Therapy products, designed with the same philosophy that looking good is a product of skin health from head to toe. Correct care of the skin on your body is vital to proper health maintenance, as well as the avoidance of the signs of premature aging. The Dermalogica Body Therapy system helps clients create aromatherapeutic, completely customized and healthy spa experiences in-between visits to your skin treatment center, salon or spa.
exfoliating body scrub

application
Squeeze a generous amount into wet hands. Massage over entire body and work into a light lather. Rinse thoroughly and pat dry. Follow with **Body Hydrating Cream** or **UltraRich Body Cream**.

contraindications
Not recommended for users of medically-prescribed exfoliation products. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been waxed.

key ingredients
- **Olea Europaea (Olive)**, **Phoenix Dactylifera (Date) Seed** and **Ficus Carica (Fig) Fruit**: pulverized powders that remove dull and dead surface cells without scratching skin.
- **Oryza Sativa (Rice) Bran** and **Phytic Acid**: help loosen cells and promote cell sloughing.
- **Papain**: softens and digests proteins, stimulating cell turnover.
- **Camelia Oleifera (Green Tea)**: helps soothe irritation.
- **Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender)**, **Citrus Aurantium Dulcis (Orange)**, **Santalum Album (Sandalwood)**, **Rosmarinus Officinalis (Rosemary) Leaf** and **Pogostemon Cablin Oil (Patchouli)**: purifying essential oils invigorate the body, awaken the senses and soothe and soften skin.

benefits / top retailing points
- Ideal for removing dulling skin cells, smoothing and evening out skin.
- Prepares skin for maximum hydration and absorption of essential ingredients from **Body Hydrating Cream** or **UltraRich Body Cream**.
- Stimulates cell renewal while removing dulling debris and gives skin a fresh new feel.
conditioning body wash

**skin condition**
All skin conditions.

**description**
A rich, skin conditioning botanical cleanser for the entire body.

**top products to prescribe**
- Exfoliating Body Scrub
- Body Hydrating Cream
- The Ultimate Buffing Cloth

**application**
Squeeze a small amount onto The Ultimate Buffing Cloth or hands. Work into a lather over the entire body and rinse.
May also be added directly into running water for a foaming bath soak.

**professional application**

1. Pump a half-teaspoon onto The Ultimate Buffing Cloth and create a lather.
2. Squeeze out excess moisture and apply The Ultimate Buffing Cloth as a mitt to the body for removal of Hydro-Active Mineral Salts during a spa treatment.
3. Follow with the application of a warm steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

**optional:**
This application may be customized as a cleansing preparation during the Thermal Touch for the Back treatment.

**key ingredients**

- **Quillaja Saponaria:** a naturally foaming extract that gently removes impurities and excess oils.
- **Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree) Leaf, Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) Peel, Eucalyptus Globulus (Eucalyptus) and Rosmarinus Officinalis (Rosemary):** purifying essential oils that invigorate skin.
- **Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B₅), Santalum Album (Sandalwood) and Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender):** help condition skin, leaving it smooth and soft.

**benefits / top retailing points**
Provides soap-free, superior cleansing that’s acid-balanced to prevent over-stripping or over-drying.
Leaves skin refreshingly clean and soft.
Enriched with moisturizing essential oils to leave skin smooth and supple.
Fragrant botanical extracts provide a natural conditioning lather.

---

![Image of conditioning body wash bottle]

**Retail Professional**
- 2.5 Fl. Oz. / 75 mL
- 8 Fl. Oz. / 237 mL
- 16 Fl. Oz. / 473 mL
- 32 Fl. Oz. / 946 mL
- 1 Gal / 3.8 L
skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
A sea-salt body therapy for a remineralizing bath soak or all-over skin polishing.

top products to prescribe
• Conditioning Body Wash
• UltraRich Body Cream
• Stress Relief Treatment Oil

hydro-active mineral salts

application
For a mineral soak: Pour a small amount into a warm bath.
For a spa style exfoliation: Shake a small amount onto dry hands or mix into a paste with 2 pumps of Stress Relief Treatment Oil and gently massage over the entire body, concentrating on elbows, knees and heels.

professional application
1. Following dry body brushing, place 2 scoops of Hydro-Active Mineral Salts into a Body Pack Bowl and customize with prescribed Professional Strength Oil. Mix to a consistency similar to that of Dermal Clay Cleanser.
2. Apply evenly to the body and exfoliate by using circular movements with alternating hands. Concentrate on drier patches of skin, such as the heels, knees and elbows.
3. Using The Ultimate Buffing Cloth and Conditioning Body Wash in the form of a mitt, swiftly remove the Hydro-Active Mineral Salts.

optional:
Add 1 ounce of Hydro-Active Mineral Salts to a hydrotherapy tub or your pedicure (foot bath). Can be mixed with Clean Massage Oil Base.

contraindications
Not recommended for users of medically-prescribed exfoliation products. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been waxed.

key ingredients
Macrocytis Pyrifera (Kelp): gently softens and polishes skin.

Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon), Rosmarinus Officinalis (Rosemary) and Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree): essential oils that help purify skin.

Santalum Album (Sandalwood), Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender), Citrus Aurantium Dulcis (Orange), Cedrus Atlantica (Cedarwood) and Salvia Sclarea (Clary): leave the skin smooth and conditioned.

Coriandrum Sativum (Coriander), Cinnamomum Zeylanicum Bark and Zingiber Officinale (Ginger) Root: naturally fragrant warming spices that stimulate the senses.

benefits / top retailing points
Excellent as a relaxing, skin-remineralizing bath soak.

Amazing as a scrub on commonly rough parts of the body, such as the knees, elbows and heels.

Skin is left revitalized with a smooth finish.

retail

professional

1 oz packettes
10 oz / 284 g

40 oz / 1.1 kg
body hydrating cream

skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
An advanced body cream with hydroxy acids and essential plant oils to smooth and condition skin.

top products to prescribe
• Hydro-Active Mineral Salts
• Stress Relief Treatment Oil
• Conditioning Body Wash

application
Apply to the body with large sweeping movements. For additional benefits, mix 1 pump of Stress Relief Treatment Oil into Body Hydrating Cream prior to application.

professional application
1. Following a spa-style treatment, apply Body Hydrating Cream evenly onto body, concentrating on areas of extra dryness or roughness such as ankles, knees and elbows.

optional:
Body Hydrating Cream may be customized with Energizing Oil – Professional Strength or Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength to intensify the moisturization properties.

Apply Body Hydrating Cream prior to dipping in Paraffin wax for hand and foot treatments.

key ingredients
Lactic Acid, Saccharum Officinarum (Sugar Cane) and Pyrus Malus (Apple): natural hydroxy acid extracts that smooth skin.

Camellia Oleifera (Green Tea): helps soothe irritation.

Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender), Pogostemon Cablin (Patchouli) and Citrus Aurantium Dulcis (Orange): essential oils that soothe and soften skin.

Cymbopogon Schoenanthus (Lemongrass): naturally fragrant; energizes and revives while toning.

Rosmarinus Officinalis (Rosemary): provides natural toning; revitalizes skin.

benefits / top retailing points
Provides gentle exfoliation and hydration to leave skin toned and smooth.

Botanical extracts and essential oils moisturize and condition.

Non-greasy emulsion absorbs easily and provides immediate hydration results.

retail
2.5 Fl. Oz. / 75 mL
8 Fl. Oz. / 250 mL
16 Fl. Oz. / 473 mL

professional
32 Fl. Oz. / 946 mL
1 Gal / 3.8 L
ultrarich body cream

skin condition
Drier or prematurely-aging skin.

description
An ultra-rich, long-lasting body cream to help heal and relieve extra dry skin. This unique, liquefying formula is also ideal for all-over, deeply-moisturizing body massage. Free of essential oils.

top products to prescribe
• Conditioning Body Wash
• Exfoliating Body Scrub
• Stress Relief Treatment Oil

application
For deep moisturization, apply to the body immediately after showering or bathing with large, sweeping movements. Concentrate on areas of extra dryness, such as elbows, knees and heels. For long-lasting body massage, pump a small amount into the palm of the hand, then massage onto the body.

professional application
1. Following a spa-style treatment, apply UltraRich Body Cream evenly onto body, concentrating on areas of extra dryness or roughness such as ankles, knees and elbows.

optional:
UltraRich Body Cream may be customized with Energizing Oil – Professional Strength or Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength to intensify the moisturization properties.

Apply UltraRich Body Cream prior to dipping in Paraffin wax for hand and foot treatments.

key ingredients

- Environmental Protection Complex: comprised of Fumaric Acid, Fumaria Officinalis (Fumitory) Extract and Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) Fruit. Shields skin from environmental influences such as pollution, temperature extremes, irritating cosmetic products, stress, poor diet or hormonal factors.

- Hyaluronic Acid, Oenothera Biennis (Evening Primrose) and Linoleic Acid: reconditions thirsty skin.

- Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B5): aids in skin repair and hydration.

benefits / top retailing points
Formulated without essential oils, this formula is ideal for even the most sensitive skin.

Uniquely long-lasting formula liquefies upon skin contact for unsurpassed moisturization with unparalleled slip-and-glide.

Does not leave a greasy residue on the skin.

Ideal for clients looking for a heavier body cream.

Excellent as a massage medium.

retail
professional

16 Fl. Oz. / 473 mL
32 Fl. Oz. / 946 mL
stress relief treatment oil

description
An aromatic body treatment oil for massage, bath therapy and deluxe skin conditioning.

top products to prescribe
- Exfoliating Body Scrub
- Body Hydrating Cream
- Conditioning Body Wash

application
For massage and scalp treatments: Pump a small amount onto palm of hand and massage onto the body or scalp.
For aromatherapy bath: Add 4 to 8 pumps into the bath.
To intensify Body Hydrating Cream or UltraRich Body Cream: Add one pump to the cream. Blend and apply in smooth, upward strokes.

key ingredients
Santalum Album (Sandalwood), Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender), Citrus Aurantium Dulcis (Orange), Pogostemon Cablin (Patchouli) and Salvia Sclarea (Clary Sage): soothing essential oils that soften skin and calm the senses.
Silicones: melt gently into skin to help diminish fine lines and smooth skin texture.
Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree), Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) and Cananga Odorata (Ylang-Ylang): natural purifying extracts help ease the body into deep relaxation for the ultimate stress relief treatment.
Prunus Armeniaca (Apricot) Kernel: water-soluble; helps soften and moisturize skin.

benefits / top retailing points
Blends perfectly with Body Hydrating Cream and UltraRich Body Cream to intensify hydration and enhance aromatherapeutic benefits.
Leaves skin velvet-soft and smooth.
Concentrated essential oils enhance muscle relaxation and stress reduction while stimulating the senses.
Multi-functional oil may be used as a stress relieving scalp treatment, for body massage or added to the bath.
the ultimate buffing cloth

application
Wet The Ultimate Buffing Cloth. Lather Conditioning Body Wash onto the buffing cloth and massage over the entire body, concentrating on any rough, dry areas such as elbows, knees and heels. Rinse cloth thoroughly and allow to air dry.

professional application
1. Pump a half-teaspoon of Conditioning Body Wash onto The Ultimate Buffing Cloth and lather up, producing foam.

contraindications
Not recommended for users of medically-prescribed exfoliation products. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been waxed.

benefits / top retailing points
Originated in Japanese spas, ideal-sized buffing cloth provides an invigorating cleansing and body exfoliation for a total body treatment.

May be machine washed on the delicate, cold wash cycle.

Exfoliates gently yet efficiently and is perfect-sized to effectively cleanse hard-to-reach areas such as the back.

Perfect for a “power-cleansing” with Conditioning Body Wash.

Rinses easily and dries quickly for greater hygiene.

Made of a long-lasting, durable fabric.
Welcome to a new way of thinking about body therapy treatments! Too often, body treatments are considered a luxury or solely for pampering, and are not treated as another practice of skin health the way face treatments are. Much in the manner that the Dermalogica skin treatment believes looking good is a product of being healthy, our Thermal Body Therapy Treatments encourage skin health while providing the results clients want to see in their skin. And with the added benefits of heat that not only comfort the client but help encourage the absorption of beneficial ingredients into skin, these therapies are sure to boost your treatment room bookings.

Thermal Body Therapy products can be customized and mixed with one another to effectively target every skin condition for significant results. In addition, all Thermal Body Therapy products help maintain the body at the thermoneutral state or above, and through specific techniques we are able to control evaporation and the movement of energy. We call this concept Thermalism, and the result is a more pleasurable treatment experience for the client, and a body temperature that is more conducive for penetration of essential product ingredients into skin. No matter what your experience with body therapies, Dermalogica Thermal Body Therapy Treatments are designed to revolutionize your treatment room, and change the way everyone thinks about body treatments. If you’re working in a skin treatment center, salon or spa and traditionally perform face treatments, our Thermal Touch Treatments are ideal for you. Focusing on a section of the body where the client feels they need extra attention, these can be performed during the masque phase of a treatment, or offered as a stand-alone “add-on” service.

If you’re working in a day spa or destination spa, any of the Thermal Body Therapy Treatments are ideal for you. The treatments can be customized to be performed in a dry or wet room, if one is available. For the advanced skin care professional or massage therapist with experience working on the body, the Thermal Touch Treatments, body wraps, exfoliation therapies, Deep Thermal Therapy with Thermal Stamp or Thermal Touch Techniques are ideal for you.
skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
A Colloidal Oatmeal and Tapioca-based powder enriched with Rice Bran powder, Papain and Salicylic Acid, designed to gently exfoliate and smooth the body.

professional application
For full body application:

1. Combine 1 scoop of Body Microfoliant®, 8 pumps of Clean Massage Oil Base and 3 to 4 scoops of hot water (depending on desired thickness).

optional:
Add 1 scoop of Thermal Heat Activator to intensify warming effects.

2. Mix with a spatula to form a spreadable paste. Customize with prescribed Professional Strength Oil.

3. Using hands, apply to entire body, including soles of feet and hands. Massage over skin using circular motions.

4. Shower off or remove product with steam towels customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

contraindications
Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne medications, Vitamin A or exfoliation products. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been waxed.

key ingredients
Salicylic Acid: stimulates natural exfoliation, helping to clear impacted follicles and minimize acne formation.

Tapioca Starch and Colloidal Oatmeal: condition while soothing skin.

Bentonite and Kaolin: clays that help absorb excess oil, refine pores and clear congestion.

Papain: softens and digests proteins, stimulating cell turnover.

Oryza Sativa (Rice) Bran Powder and Juglans Regia (Walnut) Shell Powder: naturally exfoliate, polish and smooth.

Allantoin, Honey and PCA: helps soothe, moisturize and condition skin. Also helps hydrate and stimulate skin’s reparative process, and leaves skin soft with a smoother surface.

Wasabia Japonica (Wasabi) Root and Zingiber Officinale (Ginger) Root: stimulate circulation and soothe skin.

Camellia Sinensis (White Tea): rich in polyphenols; protects against free radical damage (ROS), fights the formation of AGEs and inhibits MMPs.

benefits
Gently exfoliates skin with beta hydroxy acids, enzymes and physical exfoliants, removing dead, dulling cells and polishing skin to a smooth finish.

Stimulates circulation and cell renewal, providing a smoother, healthier surface.

Soothes and conditions skin, improving texture, feel and appearance.
**power recovery® pack**

**description**
An intense power pack of Soymilk and Colloidal Oatmeal-based powder that nourishes while hydrating and conditioning skin. Perfect for use as a full body treatment and ideal for spot-treating areas of the body that are dry, sunburned, irritated, or require extra nourishment and therapeutic attention.

**key ingredients**
- Avena Sativa (Oat) Kernel, Colloidal Oatmeal and Soymilk: powders that hydrate and soothe skin, making it great for individuals with eczema and dermatitis.
- Allantoin, Honey and PCA: helps soothe, moisturize and condition skin. Also helps hydrate and stimulate skin’s reparative process, and leaves skin soft with a smoother surface.
- Wasabia Japonica (Wasabi) Root and Camellia Sinensis (White Tea): rich in polyphenols; protect against free radical damage.

**benefits**
- Ideal for treating areas that are specifically irritated, dry, or peeling due to sunburn or environmental assaults.
- Nourishing powder soothes even the most inflamed skin.
- Hydrates skin, leaving it silky smooth and soft for hours.
- Aids in skin recovery.

**professional application**

**For full body application:**

1. Combine 2 scoops of **Power Recovery Pack**, 8 pumps of **Clean Massage Oil Base** and 1 scoop of hot water.
2. **optional:**
   - Add 1 scoop of **Thermal Heat Activator** to intensify warming effects.
3. Mix with a spatula to form a creamy consistency. Customize with prescribed Professional Strength Oil.
4. Using hands, apply to entire body or concentrate on an area of the body that requires extra attention (shoulders, décolleté, hands, back, etc.).
5. Spa wrap for 20 minutes.
6. Shower off or remove product with steam towels customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

**skin condition**
All skin conditions, especially dry or prematurely-aging skin.
thermal heat activator

application
Thermal Heat Activator may be used in 3 different ways:

**option 1**
Mix 1 scoop of Thermal Heat Activator with 2 scoops of Body Microfoliant®, 8 pumps of Clean Massage Oil Base and 4 scoops of water. Customize with 1 pump of prescribed Professional Strength Oil.

**option 2**
Mix 1 scoop of Thermal Heat Activator with 1 scoop of Enzymatic Sea Mud Pack, 8 pumps of Clean Massage Oil Base and ¾ scoop of water. Customize with 1 pump of prescribed Professional Strength Oil.

**option 3**
Mix 1 scoop of Thermal Heat Activator with 2 scoops of Power Recovery® Pack, 8 pumps of Clean Massage Oil Base and 1 scoop of water. Customize with 1 pump of prescribed Professional Strength Oil.

contraindications
Do not use directly on skin: use only when mixed with other Thermal Body Therapy products. Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

key ingredients
**Surface Treated Calcium Chloride:** helps prolong warmth and heat of products on body long after application.

**Dimethicone:** a skin-conditioning silicone that protects and reinforces barrier lipids which are often compromised in sensitized skin conditions.

benefits
Helps keep client in thermoneutral zone, increasing comfort and preventing heat loss from the body when exposed.

Prolongs heating effects when mixed with Thermal Body Therapy body treatment powders.

Enhances penetration of Thermal Body Therapy product ingredients.

Allows for free movement around client without concern about heat loss.

skin condition
All skin conditions. Not recommended for use directly on skin.

description
A unique self-heating powder that, upon contact with water, generates a burst of warmth that lasts throughout mixing and well beyond product application, enhancing comfort and product penetration. Can be used with Thermal Body Therapy body treatment powders to enhance warming effects.
**skin condition**
All skin conditions. Not recommended for use on bleached, frosted or highlighted hair.

**description**
A Seaweed and Mineral-based powder that enhances detoxification while nourishing and smoothing skin with Kelp, Papain, Caffeine, Lactose and soothing aromatic plant extracts.

**enzymatic sea mud pack**

**professional application**
For full body application:

1. Combine 1 scoop of Enzymatic Sea Mud Pack with 8 pumps of Clean Massage Oil Base and 1 scoop of hot water.

2. **optional:**
   Add 1 scoop of Thermal Heat Activator to intensify warming effects.

3. Mix with a spatula to form a spreadable paste. Customize with prescribed Professional Strength Oil.

4. Apply to entire body using a gloved hand or brush.

5. Spa wrap for 20 minutes.

6. Shower off or remove product with dark steam towels customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

**contraindications**
Do not use on chemically-processed hair.
This product contains Vitamin A. Consult a physician prior to use on pregnant women.

**key ingredients**

- **Macrocystis Pyrifera (Kelp) and Lactose:** gently soften and polish skin, leaving it hydrated and smooth.

- **Diatomaceous Earth:** a single cell algae; helps draw impurities from skin.

- **Bentonite and Calcium Sulfate:** natural earth clays that draw impurities from skin, absorb excess oil, refine pores and clear congestion.

- **Papain:** softens and digests proteins, stimulating cell turnover.

- **Caffeine and Ilex (Mate):** help tone skin.

- **Milk Thistle (Silbum) and Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) Peel:** provide bioflavonoids for antioxidant protection.

- **Wasabia Japonica (Wasabi) Root and Zingiber Officinale (Ginger) Root:** stimulate circulation and soothe the skin.

- **Camellia Sinensis (White Tea) Leaf:** rich in polyphenols, protects against free radical damage (ROS), fights the formation of AGES and inhibits MMPs.

- **Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender), Citrus Aurantium Amara (Bitter Orange), Citrus Aurantifolia (Lime) and Citrus Tangerina (Tangerine) Peel:** essential oils that purify, relax and cleanse.

**benefits**
Can be used over the entire body, including the hair (except over chemically-processed hair).

Deep cleans as natural earth clays extract impurities.

Helps digest and remove accumulated dead cells and tone tissues, leaving skin ultra-smooth.
**clean massage oil base**

**skin condition**
All skin conditions.

**description**
A conditioning Olive Fruit and Grape Seed Oil-based massage medium ideal for customizing Thermal Body Therapy products to address different skin conditions.

**professional application**

1. Dispense **Clean Massage Oil Base** into the palm of your hand. Spread gently and massage onto the body.

**optional:**

Customize with prescribed Professional Strength Oil for therapeutic benefits.

- Customize **Body Microfoliant** by adding 8 pumps of **Clean Massage Oil Base**.
- Customize **Hydro-Active Mineral Salts** by adding 4 pumps of **Clean Massage Oil Base**.
- Customize **Power Recovery Pack** or **Enzymatic Sea Mud Pack** by adding 8 pumps of **Clean Massage Oil Base**.
- Customize either **Body Hydrating Cream** or **UltraRich Body Cream** by mixing 1 pump of **Clean Massage Oil Base** in the palm of the hand and applying to body.

**key ingredients**

- **Olea Europaea (Olive) Fruit and Vitis Vinifera (Grape) Seed:** rich in antioxidant polyphenols that protect and smooth.
- **Aleurites Moluccana (Kukui Nut):** a rich source of vitamins A, C and E plus omega-3 fatty acids that help reinforce the barrier lipids of the Stratum Corneum. Used to treat skin disorders, dry skin, acne and irritation.
- **Wasabia Japonica (Wasabi) Root and Zingiber Officinale (Ginger) Root:** stimulate circulation and soothe skin.
- **Camellia Sinensis (White Tea) Leaf:** rich in polyphenols; protects against free radical damage (ROS), fights the formation of AGEs and inhibits MMPs.
- **Tocopherol (Vitamin E) and Prunus Armeniaca (Apricot Kernel):** help smooth skin.
- **Silicones:** melt gently into skin to help diminish fine lines and smooth skin texture.

**benefits**

- A lightly-scented essential oil blend leaves skin velvety soft and smooth.
- Provides long-lasting slip-and-glide during massage while conditioning the skin.
- May be mixed with other Thermal Body Therapy products and may be used with Professional Strength Oils to address specific client needs.
energizing oil – professional strength

professional application

1. Dispense 1 pump Energizing Oil – Professional Strength into the palm of the hand. Spread gently and massage onto any part of the body.

optional:

Use 1 pump of Energizing Oil – Professional Strength to customize Body Microfoliant® or Hydro-Active Mineral Salts for an energizing body exfoliation.

Use 1 pump of Energizing Oil – Professional Strength to customize Power Recovery® Pack or Enzymatic Sea Mud Pack to enhance the therapeutic effects of a body treatment.

For additional benefits and customization, mix 1 pump of Energizing Oil – Professional Strength into Body Hydrating Cream or UltraRich Body Cream prior to application.

Use 1 pump of Energizing Oil – Professional Strength to customize Clean Massage Oil Base.

key ingredients

Vitis Vinifera (Grape) Seed, Prunus Armeniaca (Apricot) Kernel and Olea Europaea (Olive) Fruit: oils act as a carrier for essential oils, while silicones soften and lubricate skin.

Salvia Officinalis (Sage) Oil, Rosmarinus Officinalis (Rosemary) Leaf, Pelargonium Graveolens (Rose Geranium) Flower and Cupressus Sempervirens (Cyprus): essential oils that energize and detoxify the body.

Wasabia Japonica (Wasabi) Root Extract and Zingiber Officinale (Ginger) Root Extract: stimulate circulation and soothe skin.

Camellia Sinensis (White Tea) Leaf: rich in polyphenols, protects against free radical damage (ROS), fights the formation of AGEs and inhibits MMPs.

benefits

An aromatic oil that provides energizing benefits to any Thermal Body Therapy product.

Intense essential oil blend helps stimulate lymph and circulatory systems and invigorate the body while helping to fight fatigue.

Conditions, hydrates, moisturizes and softens skin.
stress relief oil – professional strength

description
An intense blend of essential oils ideal for customizing Thermal Body Therapy products. This aromatherapeutic blend helps alleviate stress and soothe the body and psyche.

key ingredients
Prunus Armeniaca (Apricot) Kernel and Carthamus Tinctorius (Safflower): oils act as carrier oils for the essential oils while silicones soften and lubricate skin.

Pogostemon Cablin (Patchouli), Santalum Album (Sandalwood), Salvia Sclarea (Clary), Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender) and Cananga Odorata Flower (Ylang-Ylang): essential oils that calm the psyche and the skin while helping to relieve muscle tension and stress.

Wasabia Japonica (Wasabi) Root Extract and Zingiber Officinale (Ginger) Root Extract: stimulate circulation and soothe skin.

Camellia Sinensis (White Tea) Leaf: rich in polyphenols, protects against free radical damage (ROS), fights the formation of AGEs and inhibits MMPs.

benefits
An aromatic oil that provides calming benefits to any Thermal Body Therapy product. Intense essential oils help ease the body into relaxation while soothing skin.

Conditions, hydrates, moisturizes and softens skin.

professional application
1. Dispense 1 pump Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength into the palm of the hand. Spread gently and massage onto any area of the body.

optional:
- Use 1 pump of Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength to customize Body Microfoliant® or Hydro-Active Mineral Salts for a stress-reducing body exfoliation.
- Use 1 pump of Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength to customize Power Recovery® Pack or Enzymatic Sea Mud Pack to enhance the therapeutic effects of a body treatment.
- For additional benefits and customization, mix 1 pump of Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength into Body Hydrating Cream or UltraRich Body Cream prior to application.
- Use 1 pump of Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength to customize Clean Massage Oil Base.

7 Fl. Oz. / 207 mL
**skin condition**
All skin conditions.

**description**
A combination of Thermal Body Therapy products seated in porous fabric for the purpose of heating, detoxifying and remineralizing skin through a series of massage movements. Heat in a steam cabbie, a rice steamer or installed steam pans to intensify power of ingredients. The nature of the ingredients allows the heat to remain constant for a prolonged period of time.

**professional application**
To make one Thermal Stamp (you will need two stamps per treatment):

2. Add 8 to 10 pumps of Clean Massage Oil Base and customize with 2 pumps of Energizing Oil – Professional Strength or Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength and stir to create a firm paste.
3. Place mixture in the center of the porous fabric, gather corners together and tie tightly with a rubber band to make a firm stamp.
4. Repeat process to create second Thermal Stamp.
5. Heat stamp for approximately 20 minutes in a steam cabbie or rice cooker.

**note:**
If you prepare the Thermal Stamps before the treatment, they can be stored in the steam cabbie for retention of heat.

Always test the heat level of the Thermal Stamp on the inside of your arm before applying to client.

**benefits**
Intense heat activates ingredients and aids in the relaxation and soothing of tight muscles.

Offers relief of inflammation and itching.

Detoxifies, remineralizes, soothes and reduces stress.

Massage actions work upon the meridian lines throughout the body, aiding in relaxation and rebalance.
While the Dermalogica line has always been for both men and women, we recognize that men's skin is different, primarily because it undergoes a form of severe mechanical exfoliation: shaving. Shaving is a bit of a hazard. It can cause irritation, sensitivity, redness, razor burn, ingrown hairs and bumps often due to ingredients that either over-dry and strip skin of moisture or clog follicles with heavy formulas.

Because skin health impacts the success of every shave, Dermalogica Shave has been designed as the first double-action system that focuses on delivering a maximum comfort, super-close shave and an enhanced skin condition through ingredients that benefit skin health. Skin looks better, feels better, and each subsequent shave is enhanced. Our convenient three part system of Pre-Shave, Shave and Post-Shave is also the first to address skin condition as well as beard growth.
skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
The performance of a Dermalogica Cleanser in a convenient bar form. This soap-free, convenient bar removes impurities and breaks down surface oils without stripping the skin’s natural moisture barrier.

top products to prescribe
• Invigorating Shave Gel
• Post-Shave Balm
• Daily Defense Block SPF15

application
Lather in hands with warm water. Work over face and throat, then rinse. Repeat for double clean benefits.

key ingredients
Glycyrrhiza Glabra (Licorice) Extract and Allantoin: help soothe skin.

Lactic Acid, Avena Sativa (Oat) Kernel Flour and Retinol (Vitamin A): help smooth and exfoliate.

Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree) and Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender): extracts that help maintain bar purity during use.

benefits / top retailing points
Acid-balanced, non-drying and non-irritating to help keep skin hydrated.

Travels easily in a gym or travel bag.

Anti-inflammatory agents help soothe and condition, preparing skin for a closer shave with minimized irritation.

Hydroxy acids gently exfoliate for smoother, softer skin.
daily clean scrub

**skin condition**
All skin conditions.

**description**
A dual-action exfoliating cleanser that removes dulling surface debris, helping to lift the beard for a closer, cleaner shave.

**top products to prescribe**
- Invigorating Shave Gel
- Post-Shave Balm
- Daily Defense Block SPF15

**application**
Use prior to shaving to clean and exfoliate skin. Apply to damp face and neck, avoid eye area, in circular motions. Concentrate on areas of oiliness and beard growth. Rinse with warm water.
Can be used 2 to 3 times a week all over face.

**key ingredients**
- Salicylic Acid, Salix Nigra (Willow) Bark Extract and Silica: physical and chemical exfoliants that help remove dead, dulling skin cells.
- Betula Alba (Birch) Bark: an antioxidant. Fights off skin-aging free radicals. Helps refine and purify pores to prevent breakouts.
- Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree) Leaf: a natural antiseptic that helps inhibit bacteria while stimulating skin’s natural anti-bacterial agents. Also aids in skin healing and soothing skin.

**benefits / top retailing points**
- A beard-lifting lather containing micro-fine Silica beads helps resurface while removing oil and dulling skin cells.
- Removal of debris pre-shave helps lift beard for a closer, cleaner shave that helps minimize ingrown hairs.
- Cleans deep to help keep pores clear.
- Soothing extracts help reinforce skin’s natural barrier lipid layer that is so often compromised during shaving.
**skin condition**
All skin conditions, especially those with heavy, coarse beards.

**description**
Heavy, tough beards require extra prepping that maximizes beard softening without the high-alkaline ingredients that can aggravate and dry skin. **Pre-Shave Guard** shields and preps skin for shaving to help minimize razor burn and bumps. For use underneath **Soothing Shave Cream**.

**top products to prescribe**
- Daily Clean Scrub
- Soothing Shave Cream
- Daily Defense Block SPF15

**application**
After cleansing, apply a thin layer to beard. Do not rinse off. Apply **Soothing Shave Cream** over **Pre-Shave Guard**. Shave, rinsing blade often. Rinse with warm water. For use only underneath **Soothing Shave Cream**.

**key ingredients**
- **Camphor**: cools, soothes and helps tone to lift beard away from skin for maximum razor closeness. Helps control skin aggravation.
- **Eugenia Caryophyllus (Clove) Flower**: helps open pores, soften beard and soothe skin against discomfort associated with razor burn.
- **Triticum Vulgare (Wheat) Germ and Saccharomyces Cerevisiae (Yeast)**: soothing extracts that help combat aggravation, reddening and mechanical peeling associated with shaving. Helps defend skin’s natural protective barrier layer.
- **Menthol**: soothes and helps calm aggravation while imparting a “cool” feeling on skin.

**benefits / top retailing points**
Effectively softens heavier, coarser beards without using skin-damaging high alkali ingredients found in most shave products.

Also ideal for skin that is extremely sensitive or sensitized and requires an extra layer of defense against the razor blade.

Acts as an anti-inflammatory that helps control itching caused by irritation.

Provides intense additional lubricity during shaving.

---

6.3 Oz. / 170 g
skin condition
All skin conditions, especially sensitive or dry.

description
An ultra-lubricating cream that delivers a super-close shave that won’t leave skin feeling sore. It helps skin recover from damage while preventing aggravation brought on by shaving.

top products to prescribe
• Daily Clean Scrub
• Pre-Shave Guard
• Daily Defense Block SPF15

soothing shave cream

application
Apply to clean, damp skin. Can be applied alone or over Pre-Shave Guard. Shave, rinsing blade often. Rinse shaved area.

key ingredients
Aloe Barbadensis Leaf Juice, Allantoin, Symphytum Officinale (Comfrey) Leaf and Panthenol (Pro-Vitamin B5): soothing ingredients that aid in skin’s post-shave recovery process.

Tocopheryl Acetate (Vitamin E) and Sambucus Nigra (Elderberry) Flower: skin smoothing antioxidants help defend against skin-aging free radicals.

Simmondsia Chinensis (Jojoba) Seed Oil and Butyrospermum Parkii (Shea Butter): provide superior softening and conditioning.

Saccharomyces Cerevisiae (Yeast): an extract and rich source of vitamins, enzymes and proteins that stimulate wound healing, collagen formation and an increase of oxygen utilization in cells.

Hyaluronic Acid: provides increased hydration and improved elasticity.

Menthol: soothes and helps calm aggravation while imparting a “cool” feeling on skin.

benefits / top retailing points
An ultra-calming, anti-inflammatory shave cream that reinforces skin’s natural protective barrier and defends against razor burn.

Quickly calms and soothes skin before shaving.

Helps fight off skin-aging free radicals while smoothing skin.

Anti-bacterial phytochemicals help eliminate acne-causing bacteria.

Leaves skin smooth and soft.
invigorating shave gel

skin condition
All skin conditions, especially oilier skin.

description
A lightweight shaving gel that soothes, cools and softens. Clear formula allows for optimum visibility of areas to be shaved. Calms redness while combating irritation for a pain-free shave.

top products to prescribe
- Clean Bar
- Daily Clean Scrub
- Post-Shave Balm

application
Apply to clean, damp skin. Shave, rinsing blade often. Rinse shaved area.

key ingredients
Triticum Vulgare (Wheat) Germ and Saccharomyces Cerevisiae (Yeast): soothing extracts that help combat aggravation, reddening and mechanical peeling associated with shaving. Helps defend skin’s natural protective barrier layer.

Eugenia Caryophyllus (Clove) Flower: helps open pores, soften beard and soothe skin against discomfort associated with razor burn.

Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree) Leaf: a natural antiseptic that helps inhibit bacteria while stimulating skin’s natural anti-bacterial agents. Also aids in skin healing and soothing skin.

Hyaluronic Acid: provides increased hydration and improved elasticity.

Mentha Piperita (Peppermint) Oil: refreshes and gives a lasting cool feeling on skin.

benefits / top retailing points
Helps protect the skin’s natural barrier lipid layer that is so often compromised during shaving.

Softens the beard naturally while shielding skin against discomfort associated with shaving.

Antiseptics soothe and eliminate microorganisms.

Clear formula can be lathered in hands to create a light foam.

6 Fl. Oz. / 180 mL
close shave oil

skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
No nicks. No cuts. No redness. All accuracy! Create an instant cushion between skin and razor with this ultra-smooth shaving oil for the ultimate close shave.

top products to prescribe
• Daily Clean Scrub
• Post-Shave Balm
• Daily Defense Block SPF15

application
Shake a few drops into wet palm and smooth over dampened area to be shaved. Rinse razor often. Rinse shaved area.

key ingredients
Dimethicone: a skin conditioning silicone that protects and reinforces barrier lipids which are often compromised in sensitized skin conditions.

Camphor: cools, soothes and helps tone to lift beard away from skin for maximum razor closeness. Helps control skin aggravation.

Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree) Leaf, Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender), Thymus Vulgaris (Thyme), Eugenia Caryophyllus (Clove) Flower, Glycine Soja (Soybean) Oil: oils that help condition skin.

benefits / top retailing points
Clear, skin-comforting formula creates an instant comfort barrier that encourages razor glide while allowing you to see where you’re shaving.

Minimizes nicks, cuts and razor burn.

Conditions while maintaining skin’s protective lipid barrier that is so often compromised during shaving.

Ideal for grooming around goatees, moustaches, etc.
skin condition
All skin conditions.

description
Reduce discomfort and redness brought on by shaving with this super cooling treatment balm. Intensely moisturizes and soothes to shorten post-shave recovery time. A must-have for all skin conditions.

top products to prescribe
- Clean Bar
- Daily Clean Scrub
- Invigorating Shave Gel

post-shave balm

application
Apply to recently shaved areas of the face, neck or body. Allow to absorb before applying Daily Defense Block SPF15, or prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer and Daylight Defense.

key ingredients
Salicylic Acid: stimulates natural exfoliation, helping to clear impacted follicles and minimize acne formation.

Niacinamide, Caffeine, Biotin, Yeast Extract and Zinc Gluconate: a sebum-regulating complex that helps control oily shine.

Ammonium Glycyrrhizate (Licorice), Serenoa Serrulata (Saw Palmetto) and Aesculus Hippocastanum (Horse Chestnut): calming extracts that help reduce skin aggravation and post-shave discomfort.

benefits / top retailing points
Serves as a critical step in the shaving recovery process by shortening recovery time.

Won’t leave skin feeling heavy or shiny.

A unique ingredient complex helps prevent ingrown hairs and bumps.

1.7 Fl. Oz. / 50 mL
### skin condition
All skin conditions.

### description
Multi-tasking daytime lotion helps condition and promotes skin recovery while defending against skin-aging UV rays. Beats dryness and leaves a shine-free finish. Everyday use means healthy, great-looking skin.

### top products to prescribe
- Daily Clean Scrub
- Pre-Shave Guard
- Soothing Shave Cream

### application
After shaving and applying Post-Shave Balm, apply to face, neck, ears and back of neck for moisturization and defense against UV damage.

### key ingredients
- **Octinoxate, Octisalate and Oxybenzone:** chemical sunscreens that provide optimal UVA and UVB protection.
- **Triticum Vulgare (Wheat) Germ and Vitis Vinifera (Grape) Seed Extract:** antioxidants that help defend against skin-aging free radicals.
- **Hydrolyzed Opuntia Ficus Indica Flower Extract (Prickly Pear):** stimulates natural exfoliation to help prevent ingrown hairs and relieve follicle congestion.
- **Mahonia Aquifolium Root Extract (Oregon Grape):** helps soothe inflammation while fighting breakout formation.
- **Dimethicone and Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender):** help enhance skin’s protective barrier, which is critical post-shave.
- **UV Smart Booster Technology:** an encapsulated complex of antioxidant vitamins C and E; scavenges UV-induced free radicals while enhancing photoprotection.

### benefits / top retailing points
- Lightweight, non-greasy formula absorbs quickly into skin without leaving behind a chalky residue.
- Helps fight ingrown hairs and relieve follicle congestion.
Face Mapping® skin analysis is one of the most powerful retailing and client retention tools you can perform in your business. Face Mapping® skin analysis is a revolutionary approach to skin analysis developed by The International Dermal Institute exclusively for Dermalogica. Now professional skin therapists have a comprehensive technique with which to analyze every aspect of skin, dramatically enhancing not only the effectiveness of every treatment, but also making the prescription of a home care regimen as focused on the client’s actual needs as possible. The Face Mapping® skin analysis procedure provides the skin therapist an objective view of the skin’s condition, as well as an indication of the underlying health issues that might be affecting it. Rather than analyzing the skin in general terms, Face Mapping® skin analysis divides the face into 14 distinct zones, each with its own set of potential problems and unique needs. Using the zones and the Dermalogica Face Mapping® skin analysis outline as a guide, the therapist is able to conduct an inch-by-inch, methodical analysis of the facial landscape, guaranteeing that the subsequent professional treatment and home-care prescription will fully address each client’s concerns.
dermalogica consultation card

The Dermalogica Face Mapping® skin analysis procedure begins with an in-depth consultation that will not only reveal any contraindications to your planned course of treatment, but will also give you a glimpse into the client’s current regimen and expectations of your services. Keeping your Dermalogica Consultation Cards up-to-date will, therefore, not only allow you to chart your client’s progress, but will also be a vital legal record of whether or not each client has accurately disclosed related medical conditions. The Dermalogica Consultation Card is divided into the following key sections:

**your health**
This portion gives you valuable insight into your client’s general health, including any medical issues that might contraindicate a particular service or product, as well as general lifestyle habits that might prove useful in troubleshooting skin problems. The following numbers correspond to the questions on the Dermalogica Consultation Card.

1. Within the last year, have you been under a physician’s or dermatologist’s care?
   If your client answers yes, review the details specified. It is important to ascertain whether or not the underlying medical reason will affect your treatment choice.

2. Have you had any health problems in the past or present?
   If your client has experienced any of the following health problems in the past or present, your treatment should be modified in the following manner:
   - **cancer**—Do not perform lymph drainage. If skin cancer, have the client check with their doctor prior to treating the affected area.
**diabetes**—Diabetics have poor healing capabilities. Avoid waxing or extractions.

**epilepsy**—Do not use electrical current, as it may provoke a seizure. Avoid tightly-wrapping the client.

**heart problem**—Avoid body massage, electrical current, hot or very detoxifying wraps as they can all increase heart rate.

**hormone imbalance**—Watch for acne breakouts, very dry skin, excess hair growth and dramatic weight fluctuations.

**spinal injury**—Don’t move the neck, and avoid scalp massage.

**hysterectomy**—May experience skin breakouts and/or dryness.

**thyroid condition**—An overactive thyroid usually results in oily skin, an under-active one in dry skin.

**varicose veins**—Do not massage over the area to reduce the risk of dislodging a blood clot.

**systemic disease**—May make the client more prone to bruising and increase healing time. You should wear gloves during the treatment if the disease is communicable.

---

3. List any medications, supplements, vitamins, diuretics, slimming tablets, etc. that you take regularly. Given for various infections, antibiotics can cause rashes, pigmentation and heightened UV sensitivity. Avoid areas where this occurs, and recommend sunscreen.

**herpes ointments**—Given for cold sores. Can cause rash, itching, burning and stinging. Avoid treatment.

**high blood pressure tablets**—Can cause skin rashes, bruising. Avoid heat or over-stimulating treatment.

---

**chemotherapy**—Can result in hair loss, skin bruising and bleeding. Avoid treatment.

**cortisone**—Given to calm inflammations. Causes acne and poor healing. Avoid waxing and extractions.

**retin-a, adapalene or renova**—May be given for acne, pigmentation, premature aging or pre-cancerous skin lesions. You must avoid all exfoliation, waxing, extractions and heat over the areas where the medicine is applied because the skin is likely to be fragile, and skin lifting or sensitization may occur. Also, client will have dramatically increased sensitivity to sunlight and must use sunscreen.

**isotretinoin (sometimes marketed as Accutane)**—Given for cystic acne, this medication causes severe skin dryness and hypersensitivity. Do not perform any exfoliation, waxing or extraction anywhere on the body. Ensure that the client uses sun protection at all times.

**prescription benzoyl peroxide**—Increases skin sensitivity and dryness. Increases sensitivity to sunlight.

---

4. Do you smoke? Smoking depletes Vitamin C in the body and restricts oxygen to the skin. It impairs healing, and also causes a yellow, sallow look to the skin. May cause comedones and fine wrinkles.

5. Do you exercise regularly? Regular exercise usually improves skin condition by assisting in stress reduction, as well as the stimulation of circulation and elimination. Lack of exercise calls for a more detoxifying, stimulating course of treatment.

---

6. Do you follow a restricted diet? If a client is on a highly restricted diet or fast, breakouts can occur as part of the detoxification process. Extremely low-fat diets can result in dry skin. Long-term fasting can stimulate breakout activity, hormonal imbalance and body hair growth.

7. Do you wear contact lenses? Use extreme caution around the eye area of contact lens wearers. Do not apply pressure on or around the eyelid. Alternatively, ask if they would prefer to remove them prior to the treatment.

8. Do you have metal implants, a pacemaker or body piercings? These contraindicate the use of electrical current in any form.

9. Rate your level of stress. It has been shown that stress impacts the skin and overall well-being. Knowing your client’s stress level can indicate the changes you see in his/her skin.

10. Do you have any allergies? Allergies are more prevalent in the general population today, therefore checking with your client prior to treatment to help prevent an allergic response is essential. Knowing their allergies will enable you to screen your product ingredients and treatment protocols to ensure a safe and effective treatment. Common allergies to be aware of are pollen, food like nuts and seafood, fragrance, animals, iodine and medications.

---

*Note: For detailed information on skin reactions to medications, refer to Consumers Guide to Prescription and Non-Prescription Drugs by H. Winter Griffith M.D. Published by HP Books.*
11 Do you sunbathe or use tanning beds?. Recommend higher SPF's to sunbathing clients.

12 Do you drink more than four caffeinated beverages daily? High levels of caffeine can increase skin sensitivity and blood circulation, reduce skin moisture levels and make the client anxious during prolonged treatments. The client may also have a lower pain threshold.

13 Have you experienced claustrophobia? Clients who experience claustrophobia should never be wrapped tightly or have their arms wrapped. Never leave claustrophobic clients unattended during a treatment.

14 What are your specific concerns or challenges with your skin? Give your client an opportunity to discuss skin and body concerns. This is a basis for discussion, and will tell you whether his/her perception is accurate.

15 What skin care products are you currently using? Your client’s general level of skin care sophistication is indicated by the diversity of the home care regimen. For example, a soap user will not likely advance to a six-step daily regimen, so you should slowly introduce basic steps first. More advanced users will be open to adding targeted products.

16 Have you ever had chemical peels, microdermabrasion, or any resurfacing treatments? A full understanding of your client’s exfoliation history is vital to performing safe and effective treatments. With the number of invasive exfoliation techniques (chemical peels, laser resurfacing, light therapies and microdermabrasion), you must ensure your client’s skin has returned to normal health and thickness before recommending your own professional exfoliation.

After any of these types of treatments, the skin may be dramatically thinned. Follow the “less” rule, avoiding any steps that may over-stimulate the skin. Perform extractions very carefully, avoid all exfoliation, and ensure that your client has sun protection on at all times during the healing process.

17 Do you use Isotretinoin, Retin-A, Renova, Adapalene or any other prescription skin products? Do not exfoliate or wax the area treated by any prescription or topical acne treatment product for at least three months after your client has stopped using it. Use of prescription acne medications, including those mentioned previously in the “Your Health” section, may also contraindicate waxing, exfoliation, the use of Benzoyl Peroxide, heat and/or firm massage over the affected areas.

18 Are you currently using any products that contain the following ingredients (see card)? One of the most prevalent problems experienced by clients is over-exfoliation, which can result in dry, over-sensitized skin and can lead to premature aging. Carefully check their existing exfoliation regimen, and recommend that they discontinue these products before beginning a Dermalogica exfoliation regimen.

19 Do you experience flakiness, tightness or obvious dryness? Clients should increase their water intake, adjust to a richer moisturizer and use a moisturizing masque at least three times a week if they suffer with these issues.

20 What SPF sunscreen do you use on your face? All clients should use an SPF15 or higher sunscreen over the face daily to prevent incidental sun damage. A sunscreen should be applied to the body if sun exposure is anticipated, and the hands should always be protected by an SPF15 or higher if they are exposed while driving in daylight.

21–23 Do you burn easily in moderate sunlight? Do you have a tendency to redness? Do you suffer from sinus problems? Both your client’s answers and your own analysis of capillary activity can indicate possible early stages of rosacea, skin sensitivity and/or sensitized skin. If a client answers “yes” to any of these questions, chances are good that the skin is very easily sensitized, and should be treated with care.
**24** Do you ever experience a burning, itching or stinging sensations on your skin?
If the client experiences these reactions, you should be very concerned about cosmetic allergies. We recommend doing a patch test on the inside of the arm prior to the treatment to check for the skin’s response.

**female clients only**

**25** Are you taking oral contraception?
Oral contraceptives can cause uneven skin pigmentation, and depending on the medication, skin breakouts or dryness.

**26** Are you pregnant or trying to become pregnant?
If the client is pregnant, or trying to become pregnant, avoid essential oils, electrical current, high-temperature and detoxifying treatments.

**27** Are you lactating?
Be aware of additional breast sensitivity if the client is lactating. Do not use essential oils, and ensure that client comfort is addressed at all times. Do not wrap tightly during a spa treatment.

**28** Are you currently having or due for your menstrual period?
Menstruation increases skin sensitivity, so the client should be asked at every visit.

**male clients only**

**29** Do you have any shaving challenges?
Asking male clients about their shaving regimen in addition to their skin condition will help you identify the cause of any shaving irritation and ingrown hairs, bumps, redness, nicks and cuts. (Have clients complete the Shave Mapping™ Consultation Card, then use the other side of the card to outline a Pre-Shave, Shave and Post-Shave regimen.)

**questions to discuss every visit**

**30** Have you started any new medication since your last visit?
The addition of new medications means that you should have the returning client check over their previous entries on their Consultation Card to alert you of any new contraindications.

Have the client re-sign the card at every visit to ensure that they have not forgotten information that might affect the outcome of his/her treatment.
notes
As soon as your client arrives, request that he/she fully completes the Dermalogica Consultation Card. For a returning client, request that he/she reviews the information that you have on file, and re-signs the form.

Take the opportunity to review your client’s Consultation Card while he/she is changing, taking care to look for any issues that might contraindicate a phase of the treatment. Also, review any prior Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheets, or start a new one by filling out the upper left side of the form.

Take the client to the treatment room, place on bed and remove eye and lip make-up with Soothing Eye Make-Up Remover or PreCleanse on damp cotton.

Perform the Dermalogica Double Cleanse routine that begins with PreCleanse and follows with the prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser. Do not place eye pads over the client’s eye area, as you will need to feel around this zone during the Face Mapping® skin analysis.

Explain that there are 14 zones to the face, neck and chest, and that you will proceed to analyze each one inch-by-inch using the thumbs and fingers to feel for any problems. You may want to incorporate a magnifying lamp or magnifying headset for a closer view, but keep in mind that Face Mapping® skin analysis is based more on tactile than visual cues for increased accuracy. (This portion of the treatment should last around 10 minutes on the first visit, and about 5 minutes on subsequent visits.)

Begin the Face Mapping® Skin Analysis procedure at Zone 1. Look for the possible symptoms outlined in the “Face Mapping® skin analysis zone-by-zone” outline (see following pages) by moving your thumb and index finger over the skin.

Keeping physical contact with Zone 1, so your client knows what area you’re talking about, begin to discuss your findings and ask questions. For example, say “In Zone 1, the left side of your forehead, I found some congestion. You may want to pay extra attention to this zone while cleansing. Do you rinse your cleanser off well in this area?”

Once you’ve completed Zone 1, move onto Zone 2 and continue until you have covered all areas of the Face Mapping® skin analysis outline, repeating steps 6 and 7 for each zone. Ask questions throughout to educate your client about their skin and habits. This is critical in establishing yourself as their personal skin expert. Keep your findings in mind – you’ll have a chance to note them on the Face Mapping® skin analysis outline during the pre-extraction Scaling Fluid step of the treatment.

Once all zones are covered, continue with the rest of the treatment:
- exfoliation
- extractions

Complete Face Mapping® Skin Analysis Prescription Sheet while Scaling Fluid is applied for 5 minutes, writing in each zone what conditions were found.
- massage
- treatment masque
- tone and moisturize

While your client is changing, finalize your notes on the Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet.

Then, in the retail area of your skin treatment center, select the prescribed Dermalogica retail products for your client’s skin. Note each product on the Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet along with the zone where it should be used. Be sure to note if the product should be used in the a.m., p.m. or both by checking the appropriate boxes. Use your Dermalogica Skin Bar™ or tester unit to allow clients to feel each product.

Discuss your findings with your client, explaining why you’re prescribing certain products, and what problems they’ll help solve in each zone. Help the client understand by referring to your notes on the Face Mapping® skin analysis outline, and allowing your client to see his/her own skin in a hand mirror.

Use our codes to note your findings on the Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet diagram.

- b = breakout activity
- c = comedones
- d = dilated capillaries
- dh = dehydration
- m = milia
- p = pigmentation
- f = fine lines
- dl = deep lines
- s = sensitivity / redness

the book
13 Lastly, circle on the Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet whether your client either purchased or took samples of each of the products in your recommendation. This will help your client to remember what samples were tried and will facilitate your prescription process during the next visit.

14 Give your client samples and the top copy of the Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet folded into a Dermalogica sampler envelope, along with the retail purchase.

15 Fold your carbon copy of the Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet into the Consultation Card and file it.

**on subsequent visits**

1 Review the client’s Dermalogica Consultation Card.

2 Study the Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet for the areas of concern during the last visit, what products were prescribed and which of these were purchased or sampled.

3 Ask the client how he/she liked using the products and samples.

4 Check that there are no changes on the Consultation Card before progressing with the treatment.

5 Proceed with the treatment as before, and when you get to the Face Mapping® skin analysis stage of the treatment, refer to the previously completed Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet to see if there are improvements in the skin’s condition since the last visit. Make notes on a new Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet. This will take 5 minutes during subsequent visits. Ask them about any new skin concerns and tell them about any changes to their skin.

6 When reviewing the Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet with your client at the end of the treatment, use both the old and new sheets to show improvements and progress or new conditions and concerns.

Complete the Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet with new products and give the top copy to your client, and staple the carbon copy to the Consultation Card. You can either keep the old Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet as a reference to the skin’s improvement or discard it.
**face mapping® skin analysis zone-by-zone**

**zone 1**
**left side of forehead**

*Look and feel for congestion and dehydration.*

Pay particular attention along the hairline and eyebrows. You are feeling for congestion that can occur from not cleansing thoroughly in these areas, especially if your client wears eyebrow make-up and heavier foundation, or is not removing cleanser effectively.

**zone 2**
**between the eyebrows**

*Look and feel for congestion, areas of excess oil production and ingrown hairs.*

There may be excess oil production in this area causing breakouts. This could also be due to poor hygiene when removing eyebrow hair. Also check for vertical lines indicating dehydration to the area.

**zone 3**
**right side of forehead**

*Same as Zone 1.*

**zone 4**
**right ear**

*Look for comedones and congestion.*

Tell your client you are checking behind and inside the ear. Explain that it is common to see comedones in the ears because product and shampoo collects in the ear well. If the client uses a telephone headset or cellular telephone (especially hands-free) regularly, you may also notice comedones behind the ear. You may also see sensitivity on the ear lobes due to nickel allergies.

**zone 5**
**right cheek**

*Look for broken capillaries and subsurface congestion.*

If you find broken capillaries or congestion, ask your client if he/she smokes, lives with a smoker, has allergies, suffers from sinus problems or is getting over a chest infection (i.e., a cough or bronchitis). If there are milia and congestion in the cheek area, this could have been caused by a cosmetic blush or foundation that contains comedogenic ingredients. Sporadic breakouts in the lower area can relate to improper telephone hygiene.

**zone 6**
**right eye**

*Look for milia, fine lines and dark circles.*

Milia in the eye area can be caused by make-up that contains comedogenic ingredients, such as synthetic colors and eye shadows that glitter or have a high shine. Ask the client what they use to remove eye make-up.

Your client may also wear eyeglasses, which rub on their eye orbit. If there are a lot of lines around the eyes then ask about the size of his/her sunglasses – do they cover the whole eye orbit? The eye area is delicate and needs greater protection from the elements, and large sunglasses will protect this delicate tissue, thereby reducing sun damage and aging.

Dark circles or congestion under the surface of the eye orbit are often hereditary, but are worsened by poor elimination and lack of sleep. Eyelid irritation can mean allergies or a deficiency in the diet.
zone 7
nose and upper lip
(between the nose and lips)
Look and feel for congestion and broken capillaries.
Zone 7 tends to have the most congestion of all the zones due to the excess of sebum production in this area. Also, look for broken capillaries around the nostrils, a sure indication of poor extraction technique either by your client or another skin therapist. Comedones along the lip line will indicate the use of lip balm, lipstick or lip liners with comedogenic ingredients (i.e., artificial color) by your client. Pigmentation or increased hair growth on the top lip may be caused by oral contraceptives.

zone 8
left eye
Same as Zone 6.

zone 9
left cheek
Same as Zone 5.

zone 10
left ear
Same as Zone 4.

zone 11
left side of chin
Look and feel for undersurface congestion and breakouts.
Undersurface congestion can be due to improper cleansing technique, comedogenic ingredients in make-up or leaning head on hands.

zone 12
chin
Look and feel for undersurface congestion and breakouts.
Undersurface congestion can be due to improper cleansing technique, comedogenic ingredients in make-up or leaning head on hands.

zone 13
right side of chin
Same as Zone 11.

zone 14
neck and chest
Look for breakout activity, pigmentation and signs of aging.
Pigmentation may reveal photosensitivity to fragrances over a long period of time or insufficient application of sun care products to the neck and chest area. This area is commonly exposed to the sun and should always be protected because it is the first zone to really show signs of aging on a female.

selection of services wording
Here is some copy that we suggest you use in your selection of services to let your clients know that you offer Face Mapping® skin analysis and Body Mapping®:
Expert Analysis. Targeted Results. Dermalogica’s Face Mapping® skin analysis and Body Mapping® provide a deep look into your skin’s health. The latest advances in skin analysis provide you with a treatment specifically designed to address your personal skin concerns. It’s targeted skin care for exceptional results, and it’s only available from our Dermalogica skin treatment center.
At The International Dermal Institute and Dermalogica, we have taken the procedure of analyzing the body a step further by dividing the body into 14 zones. The skin therapist assesses the skin and tissue changes across the 14 zones while dry body brushing.

Coupled with observation of posture, movement and lifestyle consultation, the client will receive the most accurate prescription and home care advice. A customized treatment meeting all the individual needs can also be prescribed. The Body Mapping™ system provides a methodical approach to analyzing your client's body concerns and ensuring an accurate record is maintained for future reference. This is a truly personalized service to offer your clients.
As soon as your client arrives, use the five easy steps to understanding your client: Look, Listen, Ask, Touch and Record. Make mental notes of posture, mannerisms and body movement along with voice strength and pitch. Request that he/she fully completes the Dermalogica Consultation Card.

**An example:**
“Good morning, it’s very nice to meet you. My name is… and I will be performing your body treatment today. Have you had a Body Therapy Treatment before? No? Well, we have asked you to be kind enough to come 15 minutes early today to complete a Consultation Card. This is something we ask all of our new clients to complete. This enables us to customize your treatment and to check that there are no contraindications to the procedures. We just need you to check yes or no, provide any additional information requested and then sign the bottom of the card. Would you like a beverage while you complete your Consultation Card? I will come back in about 10 minutes to take you to the changing area and check if you have any questions about the Consultation Card.

Take your client to the changing area or treatment room and explain the procedure.

**An example:**
“Today’s body treatment will take approximately 90 minutes. I will ask you a few questions and share some information with you during the dry body brushing and Body MappingSM phase of the treatment. This is to help me prescribe the right treatment that will be customized for your specific needs and educate you about your body concerns. Don’t worry, I will ensure you have plenty of opportunity to mentally escape and enjoy the treatment.”

Aid your client onto the bed face down, as you will work the back of the body first.

Cleanse the feet with a sterilizing wipe or steam towel customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer.

Begin dry body brushing from the feet up towards the popliteal lymph nodes, using light strokes over backs of knees, and then up the back of the thighs and buttocks to the inguinal lymph nodes in the groin area. Use the Dermalogica Body MappingSM techniques at the same time by hand-stroking after each brushstroke to feel skin and tissue and assess changes.

Use our codes to note your findings on the Body MappingSM Prescription Sheet’s diagram.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>b</td>
<td>breakouts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>f</td>
<td>fluid retention</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>t</td>
<td>toxic accumulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c</td>
<td>circulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>d</td>
<td>dry skin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>s</td>
<td>stress</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**An example:**
“I am starting at Zone 1; this is the right leg. I notice you have some fluid retention around your ankles where you have been wearing socks. Have you noticed this before? Do you spend a lot of time sitting or standing? This dry body brushing and the massage will help to alleviate some of the fluid retention but we may need to assess your diet and exercise patterns for a long-term solution.”

Begin the Body MappingSM procedure at Zone 1 – the back of the right leg. Look for possible symptoms as outlined in the “Body MappingSM Zone-by-Zone” chart. Keep contact with Zone 1 so your client knows what area of the body you are talking about. Begin to discuss your findings.
8 Continue Body Mapping™ Zone 2 – the back of the left leg.

9 Dry body brush Zone 3 from the spine out towards the hip directing the lymphatic fluid towards the inguinal nodes in the groin.

10 Dry body brush Zone 4 – the upper back from the spine out and up towards the axilla.

An example:
“Moving onto Zone 4 – your upper back. We will certainly address the tension in your shoulders today. Can you rate your stress levels for me on a scale of 1-4: 1 being unstressed and 4 being extremely stressed? It seems you have also developed a few breakouts. These may be due to stress. I will extract what I can and apply some products during the treatment to speed the healing process. I have a fantastic cleanser to recommend for you to use at home. We can discuss that after the treatment.”

11 You may wish to confirm your findings and check postural alignment and inflammation around the spinal nerve pathways with a finding movement during the massage stage of the treatment.

12 Assess Zone 5 – the left arm, dry body brushing from the wrist to the elbow and on towards the axilla.

An example:
“Your left arm, Zone 5, has great muscle tone. But I notice you are experiencing a skin condition called keratosis pilaris. This is just a build-up of skin cells in the skin’s hair follicles. We can treat this for you in the treatment today and I can recommend a great product to use at home to improve the smoothness of the skin in this area. It may also help to increase your water consumption.”

13 Repeat with Zone 6 – the right arm.

14 Turn the client over and continue with the front of the body.

15 Dry body brush Zone 7 – from the left foot up the leg through Zone 8. Repeat on the right foot and leg for Zones 9 and 10.

16 Encourage elimination by dry body brushing Zone 11 in the direction of the large intestine. Brush from the waist in towards the inguinal nodes.

17 Zone 12 – the chest area must be dry body brushed out towards the axilla. Watch the pressure as this can be a very sensitive area.

18 Dry body brush Zones 13 and 14 from the wrist to the axilla.
19 Always discuss positive as well as negative aspects with your client. Offer advice and interact throughout. It is not necessary to verbalize all your findings as you will have a chance to record them on the Body Mapping™ Prescription Sheet.

20 Once all zones have been covered, continue with the rest of the treatment:
- Customized body exfoliation according to zone requirements.
- Massage of legs and/or back.
- Application of body packs and/or masques with scalp and/or other massage.
- Removal of pack and application of body cream.

21 While your client is changing, finalize your notes on the Body Mapping™ Prescription Sheet, selecting appropriate product recommendations. Indicate on the prescription sheet whether your client should use the product a.m. or p.m. and in which zones.

22 Discuss your findings with your client, explaining why you have made certain product recommendations. Use the tester unit or Skin Bar® to allow your client to try the products.

23 Indicate which products your client sampled or purchased. This will help to ensure that your recommendations can be followed up on the next visit.

24 Give your client the top copy of the Body Mapping™ Prescription Sheet along with any samples in a Dermalogica sample envelope, and any product purchases.

25 Fold your carbon copy of the prescription sheet into the Consultation Card and file it.

26 Book the next appointment.

**on subsequent visits**

1 Review your client’s Consultation Card, prior to him/her coming in, to see past treatment information, product purchases and samples.

**An example:**
“Good morning… great to see you again. Before we start your treatment today, I would like to review your Consultation Card to ensure all the information is the same. Would you be so kind as to sign the bottom of the card again? We review your card each time you come in for a treatment to make sure there are no changes to your health and if there are any medications that we need to be aware of.

“How have you been getting along with the body products that I recommended? I will briefly perform Body Mapping™ again today and compare our findings to the last treatment. I am sure we will be able to see some great progress.”

2 Proceed with the treatment as before, and when you get to the Body Mapping™ stage, refer to the previously completed Body Mapping™ Prescription Sheet. See if there are improvements and make notes on a new Body Mapping™ Prescription Sheet.

3 When discussing Body Mapping™ at the end of the treatment with your client, review both old and new prescription sheets to show improvements and progress or new conditions and concerns.

4 Complete Body Mapping™ with new product recommendations and give to your client. (Keep the carbon copy with the Consultation Card.) You can either keep the old Body Mapping™ Prescription Sheet as reference or discard it.
zone 1
back of right leg
Look and feel for circulatory changes, fluid retention and atopic dermatitis. Evidence of varicose veins and capillary damage may be obvious on the backs of the legs. Be advised that this may contraindicate certain treatments and applied pressure. Changes to circulation and fluid accumulation may contribute to cellulite conditions. Both circulatory changes and fluid retention may be attributed to standing for long periods of time or a sedentary lifestyle. Toxic accumulation due to diet and lack of exercise may also be considered. Inflammatory skin conditions, such as atopic dermatitis may develop behind the knees and be red and itchy.

zone 2
back of left leg
Same as Zone 1.

zone 3
lower back and buttocks
Toxic accumulation, breakouts on buttocks, sciatica, muscular stress in the lower back, fluid retention around the sacrum and stretch marks.
Check elimination processes, diet and exercise patterns. Pre-menstrual women may develop fluid retention around the sacrum area causing sensitivity to pressure and lower back discomfort. Spinal alignment in the lower back may cause sciatica and muscular tension. Stretch marks may be the result of weight fluctuations or pregnancy.

zone 4
upper back and shoulders
Changes in spinal and postural alignment and muscular tension.
Look for acne breakouts and sun damage. Both muscular tension and acne breakouts may be due to stress. Assess stress levels and posture at work. Acne may be the result of friction from synthetic or tight clothing. Sun damage may be present as pigmentation changes and/or skin lesions develop. Monitor and record changes to moles and pre-cancerous lesions (this may apply to all zones). Zone 4 can link to the lung region, so check respiratory function.

zone 5
back of left arm
Check for skin disorders such as keratosis pilaris, atopic dermatitis and psoriasis.
Skin may also be dry or show signs of sun damage. Muscle tone may be poor. Skin conditions may be due to diet and deficiencies. Assess vitamin intake and whether your client supplements his/her diet. Stress may prompt outbreaks of atopic dermatitis or psoriasis. Accumulation of uric acid in the body may also cause roughness of the skin tissue – check water consumption.

zone 6
back of right arm
Same as Zone 5.

zone 7
left foot
Look for tissue and color changes, fluid retention and viral/fungal infections. The feet can indicate postural alignment and changes to circulation and lymphatics. Check with your client as to the type of job and form of exercise he/she does, as this may be the reason for excessive skin build-up on the feet. Infections may be due to poor aeration of the feet or not drying properly between the toes. In some instances, this may also be the result of poor elimination processes. If you are familiar with reflexology, use this as a guide to understanding a little more about your client.

zone 8
front of left leg
Look and feel for dry skin, ingrown hairs and circulation changes.
Toxic accumulation may be evident on upper thighs. Product use, including alkaline soaps and depilatory creams may result in dry, itchy skin conditions. Check water consumption and diet, which may contribute to dehydration. Regular body exfoliation may help with ingrown hairs. Waxing may have caused post-inflammatory pigmentation and sensitized skin. Keratosis pilaris may manifest on the upper thighs if the skin is dry.

zone 9
right foot
Same as Zone 7.
**zone 10**
front of right leg
Same as Zone 8.

**zone 11**
abdominal area below waistline
Look for poor muscle tone, stretch marks, large intestine bloating and linear nigra.
Food intolerances may cause bloating and abdominal discomfort. Stress can often be experienced in the stomach as cramps, nausea and acid indigestion. Discuss diet and elimination processes with your client. Stress may also manifest as irritable bowel syndrome which causes intestinal swelling and cramps. Poor muscle tone can be due to lack of exercise. Stretch marks may be due to weight fluctuations or pregnancy.

**zone 12**
chest area
Look for sun damage and pigmentation, loss of elasticity, skin sensitivity, skin tags, hair growth, acne, fluid retention and stretch marks around the breast area and postural changes.
Sun exposure and the aging process can cause the deterioration of skin tissue in the chest area. Check that your client moisturizes and protects the area with sunscreens. Fragrances should not be sprayed on to exposed skin as UV light may cause pigmentation due to photosensitivity. Weight fluctuations or pregnancy may cause stretch marks to develop. Stress may result in acne breakouts or unusual hair growth in the chest area. Correct fitting clothes and underwear are vital considerations with postural change such as rounded shoulders.

**zone 13**
front right arm
Same as Zone 5.

**zone 14**
front left arm
Same as Zone 5.
Skin Bar® is the no-pressure zone where clients can receive their free Face Mapping® skin analysis, perform their own mini-treatment under the guidance of a professional, feel free to ask questions about their skin and are more likely to purchase products and book treatments. Clients love Skin Bar® because it’s fun and informative. You’ll love Skin Bar® because it increases your bottom line.

At Skin Bar®, your one-on-one interaction with your client begins with Face Mapping® skin analysis, continues with your product prescription, is the direct lead-in to MicroZone® treatments, and commences with your client getting hands-on with the Dermalogica products that will deliver results. Here are the top 5 reasons your business needs a Skin Bar®:

1. Skin Bar® is the perfect place to perform Face Mapping® Skin Analysis, which is proven to increase retail sales by up to 40%.

2. Skin Bar® drives home the importance of a product prescription that can only be given by a Dermalogica skin care professional.

3. When clients try, they buy! Skin Bar® gives clients the opportunity to play with products and ultimately fall in love with them: which leads to purchase!

4. Skin Bar® is a great place to introduce clients to the importance of professional treatments, including MicroZone® Treatments.

5. Skin Bar® is a low-pressure environment, meaning clients can get to know you and trust you as their skin care professional without feeling pressured to make a purchase.

6. Skin Bar® is a core activity to offer at events to capture new clients and increase retail sales.

**Skin Bar® Events**

If you can’t incorporate Skin Bar® into your retail area, simply hold Skin Bar® events! Invite clients via social media, with a simple postcard or email and let them know they can bring a friend. You can even take Skin Bar® on the road and participate in events, fairs and neighborhood gatherings. Skin Bar® is a fantastic acquisition tool.
Here’s an outline of the tools you need to set up a successful Skin Bar® in your business:

• It is imperative that you are well-versed in Face Mapping® skin analysis, the zone-by-zone skin analysis that gives you an objective view of each client’s skin condition. On top of serving as a tool for diagnosis, Face Mapping® skin analysis is your retailing weapon, because proper prescription of Dermalogica products means accurate results—and that means return clients!

• Set up stools around a high table with your Dermalogica counter tester unit in the middle, or create a “product pool” of retail-sized products set up neatly on a tray.

• Purchase a table-top mirror that can stand on its own, or set up your Skin Bar® in front of a mirror. Clients need to see what they’re doing when they’re applying product to their faces.

• Gather esthetic wipes or steam towels, mini-steamers, headbands, cotton pads and mirrors for clients to use when they’re testing the products on their skin.

• Make sure you have Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheets, as these will guide you through the products to recommend. The Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheets have carbon copies, meaning you can keep a copy for yourself and give a copy to your client.

• Sampling is key—make sure you have plenty of samples on hand at your Skin Bar®, as well as our sample envelopes that will keep all samples and your client’s Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet in one convenient place.
At Dermalogica, we believe that professional treatments can’t just be good – they must be so great that they become a memorable experience in the mind of the client because they feel amazing and deliver incredible results. Obviously, this has a lot to do with using excellent products. But, more to the point, it’s all about your hands and your expertise. Dermalogica and The International Dermal Institute have developed a Skin Treatment that can be customized to deliver results on every single client. That’s right – one treatment that’s different every time. Through the Dermalogica Consultation Card and Face Mapping® skin analysis, you’ll create a treatment that is as unique as your clients skin care needs.

We encourage you to come and learn the treatments and Touch Therapies first-hand in one of our free Dermalogica workshops so you can practice the techniques in action. Don’t forget that an insanely great treatment is about the details:

- Greet a client with still water or caffeine-free herbal tea.
- Complete the Dermalogica Face Mapping® skin analysis Consultation Card. This is a vital step in fully addressing client concerns.
- Perform the selected service. (Don’t forget that Dermalogica offers amenities such as spa robes and client wraps for your client’s convenience.)
- During the treatment, note any areas of specific concern on your Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet to assist with post-service consultation and retailing.
- While the client is changing (or after the treatment), select the products you will prescribe for his/her at-home regimen.
- Discuss the client’s prescription using the Dermalogica Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet for assistance.
- Give the client a copy of the Face Mapping® skin analysis Prescription Sheet plus three different product samples that he/she could add to his/her existing regimen.
the dermalogica double cleanse routine

step-by-step

1. Remove eye and lip make-up with Soothing Eye Make-Up Remover or, for more stubborn eye make-up, use PreCleanse on damp cotton.

2. Shake an ample amount of PreCleanse into dry cupped hands and spread evenly between both palms.

3. Apply PreCleanse to the sternum and spread up and out across the chest to the shoulders and behind the shoulders. Apply to face by spreading up and out across the neck, out across the jaw, out over the cheeks, down the nose and across the forehead, coming off at the temples. Perform spreading movement from the chest, below collarbone, up on throat, over chin, scissor mouth, between eyes, circle 1-2-3, temple 1-2-3 and back to chest.

4. With one hand on top of the other, proceed with finger circles between the breast and up the sternum, separate hands and circle out across the chest towards the shoulders, turn hands over shoulders and use fingertips to circle behind the shoulders and up the back of the neck, 1x.

5. Starting at client’s right side of the neck, roll pat across the neck and the décolleté area, 2x.

6. With fingers under the jaw, alternate thumbs over the chin in a figure eight movement, 4x. Continue using small thumb circles over the chin area, 4x.

7. Separate hands and thumb circle across both sides of the jaw line to the ear, lightly slide back with thumbs under the jaw line and repeat, finishing the ear, 2x.

8. With fingers behind the ears, thumb circle in front of the ear to the earlobe, making sure to work inside of the ear and around the spine of the ear, 1x.

9. Once the front and the ear itself is complete, circle downwards behind the ear with the index and middle fingers.

10. Slide back to the mouth and thumb stroke above the upper lip to the corner, then below the lip, 4x.

11. Perform upward inner cheek circles with fingertips, 4x.

12. Cross thumbs over the nostrils, lift off fingers and thumb circle with light pressure on either side of the nostril, right then left, and small circles up the nose to in between the brows.

13. Finger frictions in outward circles with middle and ring finger over entire forehead, concentrating around the hairline and finishing at the temple.

continued on the next page
The Dermalogica Double Cleanse Routine continued

Step-by-Step

14. From temple, use middle and ring fingers to stroke under the eye towards the inside corner of the eye then up the eyebrow and on top of the eyebrow. Slide back around and under the eye, over the lower lid and back under the eye to the inside corner of the eye. With light fingertips, gently slide out over the eyelid with fingers brushing the eyelashes.

15. Pressure at temples to finish.

16. Turn on and position steamer and wet hands in warm water customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

17. Emulsify PreCleanse with a spreading movement. Wet hands under warm steam and repeat steps 3 through 15.

18. Remove with damp sponges or The Sponge Cloth and warm water.

19. Commence with the second cleanse, using the prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser for the client’s skin condition.

Step 2: Preparing to apply PreCleanse.

Step 15: Pressure at temples to finish.
The Dermalogica Extraction Technique is the most efficient way to remove comedones from the skin without further impacting the health of the skin, and without spreading acne or breakout causing bacteria. The use of Scaling Fluid will further assist in the removal and ultimate recovery from extractions.

**treatment time**

20 minutes

**Step-by-Step**

1. Perform Face Mapping® skin analysis. Look for areas and type of congestion, particularly in zones 1, 2, 3, 7 and 12. Feel for under-surface congestion and check inside the ear canal for comedones. Provide feedback to the client and inquire further to discover more about your client’s skin and causes of congestion and breakouts. Assess the skin for inflamed and non-inflamed lesions to establish your extraction protocol.

2. Moisten cotton with Scaling Fluid and place inside ears. Whip Scaling Fluid with a dry Fan Masque Brush in a small bowl and apply to face in the zones where comedones were noted. Steam for approximately 10 minutes. Caution: when using high level exfoliants, avoid using Scaling Fluid.

3. Blot excess Scaling Fluid from client’s skin and form finger mitts.

4. Ask client to breathe through his/her mouth and anchor right thumb on right bridge of the nose. Stand on opposite side of the face that is being extracted.

5. Place index finger on the edge of the left nostril and push upwards. With left index finger, push toward the other finger to force the nostril outward.

6. Wiggle fingers back and forth to gently extract comedones.

7. Repeat on left side of the nose.

8. On flat areas of the face, stretch the skin with index fingers, parallel to each other, and mound the skin between the fingers and wiggle back and forth to gently extract comedones.

9. Remove Scaling Fluid residue from client’s skin with damp sponges, customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. Wipe with Post Extraction Solution.

the dermalogica skin treatment

step-by-step

All clients must complete the Face Mapping® skin analysis Consultation Card. This will help you investigate the reasons behind your client’s skin concerns. This treatment procedure cannot be effectively carried out until this has been completed.

1. Review the Face Mapping® skin analysis Consultation Card and discuss with the client on water consumption, types of medications, recent chemical procedures, etc. Ensure that there are no possible contraindications to the treatment.

2. Remove eye and lip make-up with Soothing Eye Make-Up Remover or, for more stubborn eye make-up, use PreCleanse on damp cotton.

3. Perform the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse.

   note:
   Upon emulsifying PreCleanse and throughout the second cleanse, steam may be used to facilitate the cleansing process by further softening the skin.

4. Perform the second cleanse with the prescribed Dermalogica Cleanser. Cleansers can also be customized with prescribed Botanical Mixers, depending on your client’s skin condition.

5. Remove all traces of cleanser with a warm steam towel or sponges, customizing your rinsing water with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

6. Perform Face Mapping® skin analysis. (See the Face Mapping® skin analysis section of The Book for more information).

   optional:
   Dispense 2 pumps of Daily Resurfacer onto a disk sponge and wipe over skin. This will help remove surface oils and prep skin for professional exfoliation.

7. Apply the prescribed Dermalogica Professional Exfoliant, following specific product directions. You may also choose to add mechanical brush cleansing to this step for extra exfoliation and deep cleansing benefits. These can be used with Skin Prep Scrub or Daily Microfoliant®. Proceed according to the directions for each product.

8. If extractions are to be performed, whisk up Scaling Fluid with a dry Fan Masque Brush to a light foam and apply to congested areas (under steam for 10 minutes prior to extractions). optional:

   optional:
   Perform vacuum suction over Scaling Fluid with steam for 5 to 7 minutes.

   Galvanic desincrustation on the negative polarity may be performed over Scaling Fluid and with steam for 4 to 6 minutes. continued on the next page
## The Dermalogica Skin Treatment

### Step-by-Step

Remove **Scaling Fluid** residue from client’s skin with damp sponges, customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. Wipe with **Post Extraction Solution**. Apply **Post Extraction Solution** to cotton and wipe over the extracted areas.

### Step 9
Perform the Dermalogica Pressure Point Massage using a massage medium selected according to the client’s skin condition and preference. Select from the following:

**Oil-Based System**
- Massage Cream
- Soothing Additive
- Clearing Additive
- Revitalizing Additive

**Oil-Free System**
- Oil Free Massage
- Calming Botanical Mixer
- Purifying Botanical Mixer
- Replenishing Botanical Mixer

### Step 10
Next, prepare for the masque phase. Press 6 to 10 drops of prescribed Dermalogica Complex directly onto the skin.

### Step 11
Apply prescribed Dermalogica Masque customized with prescribed Dermalogica Botanical Mixers. Remove after 10 to 15 minutes with warm water and sponges or a steam towel (for **Contour Masque**, allow an additional 10 minutes). Customize your water or towel with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

### Step 12
Spritz with prescribed Dermalogica Toner.

### Step 13
The prescribed Dermalogica Booster or Complex can be applied to address specific needs.

### Step 14
Apply **MultiVitamin Power Firm** or prescribed Eye Treatment to the eye area. Note: If using **Age Reversal Eye Complex**, follow with an application of **Total Eye Care with SPF15**.

### Step 15
Apply prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer and/or prescribed Daylight Defense.

### Step 16
According to client preference, an application of **Sheer Tint Moisture (Medium)** or **Treatment Foundation** can be applied as the final step to your professional treatment.
Welcome to a new way of thinking about body treatments! Too often, body treatments are considered a luxury, or solely for pampering, and are not treated as another practice of skin health the way face treatments are.

Much in the manner that Dermalogica skin treatments believe that looking good is a product of skin health, our Thermal Body Therapy Treatments encourage skin health, provide the results clients want to see in their skin and feel insanely great thanks to the added benefits of heat that not only comforts, but helps encourage the penetration of beneficial ingredients into skin.

No matter what your experience with body therapies, Dermalogica Thermal Body Therapy Treatments are designed to revolutionize your treatment room and change the way everyone thinks about body treatments!
mineral salt scrub therapy

skin condition
All skin conditions, except sensitive or sensitized skin.

introduction
An exfoliating Thermal Body Therapy that polishes skin while infusing it with critical hydration. This treatment can be customized to relieve stress or energize, and is most suitable for skin treatment centers with showers or wet bed facilities.

treatment time
30 minutes

suggested menu copy
Completely customized to either energize or reduce stress, this Mineral Salt Scrub Therapy polishes skin to a soft glow while providing critical hydration and nourishment skin needs. Mineral Sea Salts and Seaweed exfoliate while skin-smoothing enzymes help dissolve dead skin cells naturally for a smooth finish. Natural oils and extracts help stimulate the senses while cleansing and conditioning, and the added benefit of warmth helps invigorate the mind and body.

contraindications
Do not perform this treatment on skin with open cuts, abrasions, or on recently shaved, sunburned or irritated skin. Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliating medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

step-by-step
All clients must complete a Body Mapping Consultation Card. This will help you investigate the reasons behind your client’s skin concerns. This treatment procedure cannot be effectively carried out until this has been completed.

1. Using a spatula, mix 2 scoops Hydro-Active Mineral Salts and 4 pumps of Clean Massage Oil Base in a Body Pack Bowl.

   note:
   Customize mixture by adding 1 pump of Energizing Oil – Professional Strength or 1 pump of Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength.

2. Mix to the consistency of a spreadable paste. Add more Professional Strength Oil, if necessary.

   optional:
   Ensure warmth by positioning an Infra Red lamp over the body.

3. Apply mixture to the right leg, including sole of the foot, and massage into skin. Cover with a sheet and towel. Repeat on the left leg.

4. To remove mixture, start on the right leg, using steam towels customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. Cover with a towel and pat dry. Repeat on the left leg.

5. Apply mixture to the right side of the arm, abdomen and décolleté and massage into skin. Cover with a sheet and towel. Repeat on the left arm and left abdomen.

6. To remove mixture, start on the right arm, using steam towels that have been customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. Cover with a towel and pat dry. Repeat on the left arm and abdomen.

7. Have the client move into recovery position and apply mixture to the back. Remove with a steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. Have client lie on his/her back.

   optional:
   Wet Room: Rinse off mixture with hot Vichy Shower, wet bed, hose, or direct client to the shower.

8. If this is the final step, apply Body Hydrating Cream or UltraRich Body Cream to the entire body. Otherwise, proceed with the next treatment (i.e., Power Recovery Therapy or Nourishing Sea Mud Therapy).
body foliation therapy

step-by-step

All clients must complete a Body Mapping Consultation Card. This will help you investigate the reasons behind your client’s skin concerns. This treatment procedure cannot be effectively carried out until this has been completed.

1. Using a spatula, mix 2 scoops of Body Microfoliant¹, 1 scoop of Thermal Heat Activator, 8 pumps of Clean Massage Oil Base and 4 scoops of hot water in a Body Pack Bowl.

   **note:**
   Customize mixture by adding 1 pump of Energizing Oil – Professional Strength or 1 pump of Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength.

2. Mix to a consistency of a spreadable paste. Add more Professional Strength Oil, if necessary.

   **note:**
   For extra exfoliation, add 4 pumps of Exfoliant Accelerator 35.

   **optional:**
   Ensure warmth by positioning an Infra Red lamp over the body.

3. Apply mixture to the right leg, including the sole of the foot, and massage into skin. Cover with a sheet and towel. Repeat on the left leg.

4. To remove mixture, start on the right leg, using steam towels customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. Cover with a towel and pat dry. Repeat on the left leg.

5. Apply mixture to the right side of the arm, abdomen and décolleté and massage into skin. Cover with a sheet and towel. Repeat on the left arm and abdomen.

6. To remove mixture, start on the right arm, using steam towels that have been customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. Cover with a towel and pat dry. Repeat on the left arm.

7. Have the client move into recovery position and apply mixture to the back. Remove with a steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. Have client lie on his/her back.

   **optional:**
   Wet Room: Rinse off mixture with hot Vichy Shower, wet bed, hose, or direct client to the shower.

8. If this is the final step, apply Body Hydrating Cream or UltraRich Body Cream to the entire body. Otherwise, proceed with the next treatment (i.e., Power Recovery Therapy or Nourishing Sea Mud Therapy).
**power recovery® therapy**

**step-by-step**

All clients must complete a Body Mapping™ Consultation Card. This will help you investigate the reasons behind your client’s skin concerns. This treatment procedure cannot be effectively carried out until this has been completed.


   **note:**
   Customize mixture by adding 1 pump of **Energizing Oil – Professional Strength** or 1 pump of **Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength**.

2. Mix to the consistency of a spreadable paste. Add more Professional Strength Oil, if necessary.

   **optional:**
   Ensure warmth by positioning an Infra Red lamp over the body.

3. Have client lie in recovery position and apply/pour the mixture onto the legs, back, outer arms and shoulders, décolleté and stomach, and underside of arms.

4. Have the client lie on his/her back and wrap in Body Pack Film. Apply mixture to the side of the body client was lying on previously and wrap with Body Pack Film. Follow with a Metallic Spa Sheet and Wool Insulation Blanket, and allow client to rest for 20 minutes.

5. Unwrap the right leg and remove mixture with a steam towel that has been customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. Fold in the Body Pack Film. Repeat on the left leg.

6. Unwrap the right side of the arm, abdomen, and décolleté, and remove mixture with a steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. Fold in the Body Pack Film. Repeat on the left side.

7. Have the client move into recovery position and remove mixture from the back with a steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. Fold in the Body Pack Film.

   **optional:**
   Wet Room: Rinse off mixture with hot Vichy Shower, wet bed, hose, or direct client to the shower.

8. Apply **Body Hydrating Cream** or **UltraRich Body Cream** to entire body.

   **note:**
   Customize by adding 1 pump of appropriate Professional Strength Oil to **Body Hydrating Cream** or **UltraRich Body Cream**.

---

**skin condition**

Drier, dehydrated, sensitized or prematurely-aging skin.

**introduction**

A Thermal Body Therapy ideal for those suffering with the signs of premature aging, or suffering with dry, sensitive or irritated skin. This treatment can be performed as an all-over body treatment, and is suitable for skin treatment centers with a dry or wet room set-up.

**treatment time**

30 minutes

**suggested menu copy**

An intense wrap therapy dedicated to feeding your skin with the nourishment it craves. A unique blend of Wheat Protein and Honey act as maximum hydrators while Wasabi, Ginger and White Tea stimulate blood circulation to promote healthier skin. Customized essential oil blends in a massage medium offer aromatherapeutic benefits, while rich Kukui Nut, Olive and Grape Seed oils smooth and provide antioxidant protection.

**contraindications**

Not recommended for users of any topical or orally-prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliating medications. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.
nourishing sea mud therapy

step-by-step

All clients must complete a Body Mapping Consultation Card. This will help you investigate the reasons behind your client’s skin concerns. This treatment procedure cannot be effectively carried out until this has been completed.

1. Using a spatula, mix 1 scoop of Enzymatic Sea Mud Pack, 1 scoop of Thermal Heat Activator, 8 pumps of Clean Massage Oil Base and 1 scoop of hot water in a Body Pack Bowl.

2. Mix to the consistency of a spreadable paste. Add more Professional Strength Oil, if necessary.

optional:

Ensure warmth by positioning an Infra Red lamp over the body.

3. Have the client lie in recovery position and using a gloved hand or brush, apply the mixture onto the legs, back, outer arm and shoulder, décolleté and stomach, and underside of arm.

4. Have the client lie on his/her back and wrap in Body Pack Film. Apply mixture to the side of the body client had been lying on and wrap with Body Pack Film. Follow with a Metallic Spa Sheet, Wool Insulation Blanket, and allow client to rest for 20 minutes.

5. Unwrap the right let and remove mixture with a steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. Fold in the Body Pack Film. Repeat on the left leg.

6. Unwrap the right side of the arm, abdomen, and décolleté, and remove mixture with a steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. Fold in the Body Pack Film. Repeat on the left side.

7. Have the client move into recovery position and remove mixture from the back with a steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. Fold in the Body Pack Film.

optional:

Wet Room: Rinse of mixture with hot Vichy Shower, wet bed, hose, or direct client to the shower.

8. Apply Body Hydrating Cream or UltraRich Body Cream to entire body.

note:

Customize by adding 1 pump of appropriate Professional Strength Oil to Body Hydrating Cream or UltraRich Body Cream.
mud massage therapy

skin condition
All skin conditions.

introduction
Deliver the ultimate in skin conditioning while detoxifying and cleansing with this stimulating treatment.

treatment time
20 minutes (Can also be used as part of a full hour massage therapy technique for extra skin benefits.)

suggested menu copy
A unique and exotic treatment that combines the detoxifying and cleansing capabilities of earth clays with the intensely moisturizing power of natural oils. Olive and Grape Seed oils protect, smooth and condition while fortifying skin with antioxidants, and a unique blend of Asian herbs stimulate circulation. Your skin is smooth, soothed and protected.

contraindications
Do not perform on pregnant clients.

step-by-step
All clients must complete a Body Mapping Consultation Card. This will help you investigate the reasons behind your client’s skin concerns. This treatment procedure cannot be effectively carried out until this has been completed.

note: Apply 2 pumps of Clean Massage Oil Base to skin prior to applying mud.

1 Using a spatula, mix a ¼ scoop of Enzymatic Sea Mud Pack and 1 scoop of Thermal Heat Activator. Mix with a ¼ scoop of water then add 10 to 12 pumps of Clean Massage Oil Base in a Body Pack Bowl.

note: Customize mixture by adding 1 pump of Energizing Oil – Professional Strength or 1 pump of Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength.

2 Mix to the consistency of a spreadable paste. Add more Professional Strength Oil, if necessary.

3 Apply mixture to the body using Thermal Touch Techniques, or alternatively with a full hour massage therapy technique.

4 Remove excess product with steam towels customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

optional:
Wet Room: Rinse off residue with hot Vichy shower, wet bed, hose or direct client to the shower.

5 Apply Body Hydrating Cream or Ultra Rich Body Cream.

note:
Customize by adding 1 pump of Clean Massage Oil Base to Body Hydrating Cream or Ultra Rich Body Cream.
skin condition
All skin conditions.

introduction
Designed to treat both skin and body concerns, Deep Thermal Therapy detoxifies, remineralizes, de-stresses, and provides relief from skin inflammation. The nature of the ingredients allows the heat of the Thermal Stamps to remain constant for a prolonged period of time.

treatment time
1 to 1 ½ hours (Includes Body Mapping®, exfoliation, Thermal Touch Techniques, and making of two Thermal Stamps. To keep treatment at 1 hour, do not perform Thermal Touch Techniques.)

suggested menu copy
Inspired by the practices of Thai Therapy of the 14th century, this treatment utilizes a unique fabric stamp filled with skin-benefiting ingredients and the power of heat to detoxify, remineralize, de-stress, exfoliate and relax. Natural earth clays draw out impurities while extracts stimulate circulation and smooth skin. The deep manipulations along pressure points and the meridian of the body relieve aching muscle tissue and work to rebalance the body.

contraindications
Do not perform this treatment on clients with diabetes, high or low blood pressure, circulatory disorders, cuts, abrasions, bruises, swelling, intense inflammation, or who are pregnant.

deep thermal therapy with thermal stamp

step-by-step
To make one Thermal Stamp (you will need two stamps per treatment):


b. Add 8 to 10 pumps of Clean Massage Oil Base and 1 pump of Energizing Oil – Professional Strength or 1 pump of Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength. Mix to create a firm paste.

c. Place mixture in the center of the porous fabric, gather corners together and tie firmly with a rubber band followed with a cotton tie to make a firm Thermal Stamp. Repeat process to create second Thermal Stamp.

d. Heat Thermal Stamp for approximately 20 minutes in a steam cabbie or rice cooker. If you prepare the Thermal Stamps before the treatment, they can be stored in the steam cabbie to be kept warm.

1. Start with client lying on back. Starting at the legs, perform a full body exfoliation using Body Microfoliant®. Remove with 3 steam towels.

2. Perform Thermal Touch Techniques, starting at the legs, with Clean Massage Oil Base, customized with 1 pump of Energizing Oil – Professional Strength or Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength. Finish on client’s back.

3. Remove one Thermal Stamp from your steam cabbie, or make your Thermal Stamps at this stage.

note:
Test the temperature of the Thermal Stamp on your inner arm before applying to client’s skin.

4. Tap the Thermal Stamp across the shoulders with quick, firm movements.

5. Tap along the erector spinae on both sides from sacrum to shoulders, then over the rest of the back. Use caution along the kidneys. Cover the back with a towel and expose both legs.

6. Starting at the soles of the feet, tap up the back of the legs in the direction of the buttocks in three lines. Begin on the left leg and work from the inner calf to the groin, work the middle line then outer, finishing on the thigh. Repeat on the right leg.

7. Starting on the sole of the left foot, firmly massage with upward, circular movements (support foot with other hand).

8. Continue the circular movements up the legs, towards the buttocks in three lines: inner, middle and outer. Slide down the leg after each movement. Repeat on the right leg. Cover the legs with a towel and uncover the back.

continued on the next page
step-by-step

9. Perform circular movements over the sacrum three times.

10. Tap the left side of the erector spinae to the base of the occiput. Slide down and repeat on the other side.

11. Perform circular motions over the left side of the back to the shoulder. Work circular movements over the top of the shoulders (therapist can work from the head of the bed), extend movements over the upper arms, deltoid and triceps to the elbows. Massage down the right side of the body.

optional:

12. Two Thermal Stamps can be used on upper body and into base of neck region.

13. To finish, place Thermal Stamp over the sacrum and count to three.

14. Turn the client over and either make a fresh stamp or remove your second pre-made stamp from your steam cabbie.

note:

15. Test the temperature of the Thermal Stamp on your inner arm before applying to client’s skin.

16. Start by tapping the Thermal Stamp on the front of the leg in three lines: inner, middle and outer. Repeat on the right leg. Cover the legs and uncover the abdomen.

17. Quickly and gently tap on the abdomen in the direction of the large intestine. Do this once and cover the abdomen.

18. Starting on the left side, tap Thermal Stamp over the chest and down entire left arm. Repeat on the right arm.

19. Starting at the top of the left shoulder, massage with circular movements down the arm to the hand. Hold the Thermal Stamp in the client’s palm and mold and squeeze. Slide up the arm and repeat on the right side.

optional:

20. Uncover the abdomen. With circular movements, massage over the large intestine once. Cover the abdomen.

21. Starting on the left leg at the inner ankle, massage with upper circular movements to the top of the thigh. Repeat on the middle and outer part of the leg, then repeat on the right leg.

22. Place a tissue on the forehead and the Thermal Stamp over the client’s third eye. Hold in place for a count of 10.

23. After the treatment, there may be some residual product left on the skin. This can be left on for added benefit to the client. If you choose to remove the residue, remove with a steam towel.
Skin care is all about the power of touch, and you can offer your clients the ultimate in completely customized treatments with Touch Therapies and Thermal Touch Treatments. Touch Therapies and Thermal Touch Treatments are intensive, 15 to 30 minute “add-on” treatments that focus on a section of the body – wherever the client feels they need the most attention on that day. Touch Therapies and Thermal Touch Treatments are great for any skin therapist, as they can be performed alone and featured on your menu as an “add-on” service or performed during the masque phase of a skin treatment. Combining the power of touch with your knowledge of the body can be the personal attention your client needs for sound body and mind.
UltraCalming™ skin relief massage

step-by-step

1. Perform inhalation techniques: cup hands over face while encouraging client to do deep abdominal breathing; hold hands over the nose and mouth area for 3 deep abdominal breaths. Helps to improve breathing, calms the psyche through inhalation of essential oils.

2. Place hands together on the sternum, palms flat to the skin, perform light pressure in a clockwise motion. On the exhale breath 3x. Helps to improve breathing and calms the psyche.

3. Move hands out to the anterior axillae and press shoulders down to the bed 3x. Pivot hands to cup the shoulders and press towards the feet 3x. Relaxes the chest and shoulders.

4. Bring the hands around the shoulders and with whole hands stroking behind the shoulders bring to the base of the skull, stretch the spine gently by pulling towards your body 3x. Relieves stress and tension in the head, neck and shoulders.

5. Reposition hands slightly and using the middle finger on both hands, stroke upwards on the governing meridian to the occipital ridge. Pulse with middle finger on (GV 16) stress point 3x. Relieves stress and tension in the head, neck and shoulders.

6. Bring hands out from behind the head and stroke the jaw and cheeks with fingers, and then the forehead with the fleshy part of the thumbs simultaneously 3x. Drainage movement; tension relief for frontal sinus and headache.

7. Pulse with the middle finger to temple (Tai Yang) 3x. This relieves headache and stress.

8. Using the fleshy part of the thumb stroke over the brows and follow with cushioned forefinger stroking under the eyes draining to the temporal lymph node. Drainage of the mastoid sinuses.

9. Stroke under the eyes with middle fingertips and pinch the eyebrows between thumb and forefinger to the end of the eyebrows 3x. This movement helps to drain the frontal sinuses and relieve tired eye muscles.

10. Pulse with the middle finger at the inner eye socket (B1) 3x. This helps with pain and swelling in the eyes, nosebleeds and sinus problems.
11. Move up to the inner brow bone and pulse (B2) 3x. *This helps reduce frontal migraine and eye pressure.*

12. Pulse at the end of the brow near the temples (TH23). *This is for clearing the ears and eyes, and helps with headaches.*

13. Using the sides of the thumbs, press by rolling on the zygomatic bone at the mid point of each eye (S2) 3x. *This improves eye clarity and color.*

14. Rest thumbs together above the brows and press with cushioned forefinger at the side of the nose, drain above the cheekbone under the eye. Move down and press (LI 2) drain under the cheekbone, 3x. *This helps relieves sinus congestion.*

15. Repeat step 8 then 6.

16. Move to the décolleté and finger stroke outward with light pressure up the chest, neck and face. Finish by covering the eyes hold and feather off over eye lids.
pressure point massage

**skin condition**
All skin conditions.

**introduction**
Pressure point massage combines aromatherapy, acupressure and lymphatic drainage to eliminate toxins and relax tissues. Pressure Point Massage can also help improve blood circulation, enhance metabolism, relax tired muscles and provide great health benefits to the body.

**treatment time**
15 minutes

**contraindications**
Check your Face Mapping® skin analysis Consultation Card for any skin or medical conditions that might contraindicate a product selection.

---

**step-by-step**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Step</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Begin with inhalation techniques. Move hands out to the anterior axillae and press shoulders down to the bed, 3x.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Rest fingers just above the ears. Thumbs with pressure over the vertical lines. Move up and down.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Thumb sliding over frontal vertical lines.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Thumb press and slide over brows and over to front of ears. Follow in similar pattern over entire forehead.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Palmar pad sliding over forehead to ears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Rest thumbs above inner brow. Use cushioned middle finger above cheekbone from nose to ears. Work above, on top of, and under the cheekbone, draining across.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Drain the jaw lines. Stroke-back to the ears and work the ears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Drain jaw and forehead together one after the other. Fingers back along the jaw, palms over forehead to ears.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Make as if to “scoop” the jaw, then slide-down the throat to the collarbone. Stroke under collarbone to shoulder.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Press down on shoulder front then pivot and press with the heel of the hand.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Slide up back of shoulder into Arnold’s Hollows. Work the occipital ridge.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Cradle movement is optional for neck.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Work neck reflex on feet if client’s neck is stiff or unable to be worked on.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Commence with application of the prescribed Complex and Masque portion of the treatment.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
thermal touch for the hands and arms

step-by-step

All clients must complete a Body Mapping™ Consultation Card. This will help you investigate the reasons behind your client’s skin concerns. This treatment procedure cannot be effectively carried out until this has been completed.

1. Apply Post Extraction Solution to cotton and wipe hands and arms. Follow with a steam towel customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer.

2. Using a spatula, mix 1 scoop of Body Microfoliant® with 1 scoop of Thermal Heat Activator, 4 pumps of Clean Massage Oil Base and 2 scoops of hot water in a Body Pack Bowl to create a smooth paste.

3. To customize, add 1 pump of Energizing Oil – Professional Strength or Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength.

4. Apply to the hands and arms and massage into each area.

5. Remove with a steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

6. Apply Body Hydrating Cream customized with 1 pump of Energizing Oil – Professional Strength or Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength.

7. Pour warm paraffin into a plastic liner and put one hand into the bag. Follow with a toweling mitten. Repeat on other side.

   note:

   If performing during a skin treatment, remove the masque now and finish the skin treatment.

8. Remove toweling mitten and paraffin. Conclude by applying MultiVitamin BodyBlock SPF20 to hands and arms.

skin condition

All skin conditions.

introduction

Ideal as an “add-on” treatment or as a stand-alone treatment for clients needing extra attention for their hands and arms.

treatment time

20 minutes

suggested menu copy

Your arms and hands will meet their relief during this Thermal Touch Treatment that includes paraffin. This customized treatment is designed to cleanse, exfoliate, hydrate and condition the hands and arms so they are smoother, brighter, healthier and refreshed.

contraindications

Check your Body Mapping® Consultation Card for any skin or medical conditions that might contraindicate a product selection.
skin condition
All skin conditions, especially prematurely-aging and hyperpigmented skin.

introduction
Nourish, hydrate and protect one of the most sensitive areas on the body with this treatment. This is a great “add-on” treatment that can be done during the masque phase or offered as a stand-alone treatment that addresses sensitized, irritated or sunburned chest and shoulders.

taxtime
15 minutes

suggested menu copy
Don’t stop at the neckline! Improve the health and appearance of your décolleté with this treatment that’s great for prematurely-aging, sunburned or irritated skin. Help repair damage brought on by long-term or recent exposure to the elements with intensely hydrating and nourishing ingredients.

contraindications
Check your Body Mapping Consultation Card for any skin or medical conditions that might contraindicate a product selection.

thermal touch for the décolleté, neck and chest

step-by-step
All clients must complete a Body Mapping Consultation Card. This will help you investigate the reasons behind your client’s skin concerns. This treatment procedure cannot be effectively carried out until this has been completed.

1. Apply 5 drops of UltraCalming Complex directly on décolleté and shoulders.
   Using a spatula, mix 1 scoop of Power Recovery Pack, ½ scoop of Thermal Heat Activator, 4 pumps of Clean Massage Oil Base and ½ scoop of hot water in a Body Pack Bowl to form a spreadable paste.
   note:
   If skin is sensitized do not include Thermal Heat Activator in mixture.

2. Apply paste to décolleté and shoulders. Leave on for 10 minutes.
   While paste is on décolleté and shoulders, perform a 10 minute scalp massage using Clean Massage Oil Base customized with Energizing Oil – Professional Strength or Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength.

3. Remove with steam towels customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

thermal touch for back purification

step-by-step

All clients must complete a Body Mapping™ Consultation Card. This will help you investigate the reasons behind your client’s skin concerns. This treatment procedure cannot be effectively carried out until this has been completed.

1. Lather Conditioning Body Wash (or Clearing Skin Wash if client has acne) in hands and apply to back. Remove with a steam towel customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer.

2. Using a spatula, mix 1 scoop Body Microfoliant®, 1 scoop Thermal Heat Activator, ½ scoop of hot water and 4 pumps Exfoliant Accelerator 35 in a Body Pack Bowl to a smooth paste. Apply to back, concentrating on areas of congestion. Massage for 5 minutes. Steam can be used.

3. Remove with a steam towel customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer.

4. Whip up Scaling Fluid and apply to congested areas and steam for 5 to 10 minutes.

5. Blot area with tissue and perform manual extractions.

6. Apply Post Extraction Solution onto damp cotton and wipe over area.

7. Using a spatula, mix ½ scoop of Enzymatic Sea Mud Pack with 1 scoop of Thermal Heat Activator in a Body Pack Bowl. Add ½ scoop of hot water to form a spreadable paste. Apply to the back with gloved hands and leave unwrapped under an Infra Red lamp for 5 minutes.

8. Massage arms and base of scalp with Clean Massage Oil Base customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer.

thermal touch for the legs and feet

step-by-step

All clients must complete a Body Mapping℠ Consultation Card. This will help you investigate the reasons behind your client’s skin concerns. This treatment procedure cannot be effectively carried out until this has been completed.

1. Soak feet in a bowl of warm water customized with 1 scoop of Hydro-Active Mineral Salts.

2. While feet are soaking, use a spatula to mix 1 scoop of Body Microfoliant®, 2 pumps of Exfoliant Accelerator 35 and 2 scoops of hot water in a Body Pack Bowl to form a creamy consistency.

3. Lift feet out onto a towel, dry.

4. Apply mixture from foot up to the knee and massage into skin.

5. Work mixture into the leg and foot for 5 minutes, paying special attention to hardened areas.

6. Remove with steam towels customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. Repeat on other leg.

   note:
   Perform nail and cuticle work, if necessary.

7. Combine 1 pump of Clean Massage Oil Base with 1 pump of prescribed Professional Strength Oil and apply to leg and foot using Thermal Touch Techniques. Repeat on other leg.

8. Using a spatula, mix 1 scoop of Power Recovery® Pack, ½ scoop of Thermal Heat Activator, 4 pumps of Clean Massage Oil Base and 1 scoop hot water in a Body Pack Bowl to form a creamy consistency. Customize with 1 pump of prescribed Professional Strength Oil.

9. Apply to lower legs and feet. Wrap each leg in plastic film and then a towel to keep warm. Leave on for 5 to 7 minutes.

10. Remove with a steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer.

11. Conclude by applying Body Hydrating Cream or Ultra Rich Body Cream to legs and feet.
microZone® treatments

Often times, clients want a quick, targeted solution to an immediate skin care concern, such as a bothersome breakout, tired eyes or dull, lackluster skin, without surrendering to the full 60-minute treatment. For this reason, Dermalogica has created MicroZone® treatments: the 20-minute, high-intensity, accelerated version of the Dermalogica Skin Treatment that takes place in ⅓ of the time! MicroZone® treatments are intended to focus on a specific Face Mapping® skin analysis zone or all 14 zones. MicroZone® treatments are not intended to replace the full Dermalogica Skin Treatment (which should be administered every 4 to 6 weeks for optional skin health results). However, MicroZone® treatments are ideal for solving skin care concerns between professional skin treatments. MicroZone® treatments are also ideal for clients who are new to the Dermalogica line or have never received a professional skin treatment, mature clients, men, teens and tweens. They provide a true skin care solution in just 20 minutes, and create a model setting for you to prescribe a Dermalogica home care regimen that will maintain results.
introduction
Resurface and brighten to help diminish the appearance of fine lines and improve elasticity.

treatment time
20 minutes

suggested menu copy
Firm, resurface, tone and brighten with this maximum strength exfoliation treatment! Hydroxy acids lift dulling surface debris while a nourishing cocktail of vitamins, botanical extracts and conditioners help reverse signs of aging and restore skin to optimal health.

contraindications
Check your Face Mapping® skin analysis Consultation Card or MicroZone® Consultation Card for any skin or medical conditions that may contraindicate a product selection.

Not recommended for users of any topical or orally prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. If client is using these products, he/she must discontinue at least 2 weeks before undergoing this treatment. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

Clients taking Isotretinoin (sometimes marketed as Accutane) or have taken Isotretinoin in the past 6 months should not receive any exfoliation treatments.

key products to prescribe
Skin Resurfacing Cleanser
Antioxidant HydraMist
Daily Resurfacer
MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant
Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30
Age Reversal Eye Complex

microZone® flash exfoliation

step-by-step
1. Review the MicroZone® Treatment Consultation Card that your client has completed and ask any additional pertinent questions. (1 minute)
2. Cleanse with Skin Resurfacing Cleanser (with Ultrasonic if available). Remove all traces of cleanser with a steam towel or warm esthetic wipes. (If client is sensitive to Skin Resurfacing Cleanser, Special Cleansing Gel may be used. Wipe skin with Daily Resurfacer instead of Post Extraction Solution). (4 minutes)
3. Wipe skin with 2 pumps of Daily Resurfacer to degrease and perform zone-specific Face Mapping® skin analysis. Look for intact barrier function, dehydration, dead cell build up and congestion. (1 minute)
4. Exfoliate with 1 tube of MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant alone, or with 1 pump Exfoliant Accelerator 35. Alternatively, depending on the client’s skin condition, you may select from Dermalogica’s Professional Exfoliant options. Process according to client’s skin condition and product guidelines. (5 minutes)
5. Remove with dry gauze. Perform the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse and is followed by Special Cleansing Gel. Remove with a warm steam towel customized with Replenishing Botanical Mixer. (4 minutes)
6. Spray with Dr. Lucas Pulverizer, Vacuum Spray or Eco Spray that has been customized with 6 drops of Replenishing Botanical Mixer. Spritz face and neck with Antioxidant HydraMist. (3 minutes)
7. Apply 6 drops of AGE Smart® Complex followed by MultiVitamin Power Firm to the eye area. Moisturize and protect with Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30 (or prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer). (2 minutes)

IMPORTANT: When using any professional exfoliation or electrical modalities, under no circumstances should you leave your client unattended in the treatment room at any time, even if the exfoliant used would be considered mild, or the machine is pre-programmed and fully automated.
**introduction**
Deep clean and purify to clear current breakouts while preventing future breakouts.

**treatment time**
20 minutes

**suggested menu copy**
A super-cleansing, purifying treatment that clears current breakouts and helps prevent future breakouts. Eliminate congestion in a specific area of the skin that needs it most, or get treated all-over for clearer skin.

**contraindications**
Check your Face Mapping® skin analysis Consultation Card or MicroZone® Consultation Card for any skin or medical conditions that may contraindicate a product selection.

Not recommended for users of any topical or orally prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. If client is using these products, he/she must discontinue at least 2 weeks before undergoing this treatment. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

Clients taking Isotretinoin (sometimes marketed as Accutane), or have taken Isotretinoin within the past 6 months, should not receive any exfoliation treatments.

**key products to prescribe**
Clearing Skin Wash
Skin Purifying Wipes
Clearing Mattifier
Concealing Spot Treatment

---

**microZone® blackhead relief**

**step-by-step**

1. Review the MicroZone® Treatment Consultation Card that your client has completed and ask any additional pertinent questions. *(1 minute)*

2. Spot cleanse the skin if you are working on a particular zone to perform extractions. Use PreCleanse (with vacuum suction if available or Ultrasonic). Remove with esthetic wipes. *(2 minutes)*

3. Wipe the skin with 2 pumps of Daily Resurfacer to degrease and perform zone-specific Face Mapping® skin analysis. Look for congestion, under the surface micro-comedones and impactions. *(1 minute)*


   Option #2-Exfoliation/Desincrustation: mix 1 scoop Part A of Skin Exfoliant System and ¾ teaspoon Scaling Fluid customized with 2 drops of Purifying Botanical Mixer. (Option of using galvanic desincrustation on the (-) pole over Scaling Fluid or Enzymatic Base, Part A with Scaling Fluid). *(6 minutes)*

5. Remove with esthetic wipes or a warm steam towel customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer. *(1 minute)*

6. Perform extractions. *(5 minutes)*

7. Rinse with warm esthetic wipes. Wipe with Post Extraction Solution over zones where extractions were performed. *(1 minute)*

8. Spritz with Multi-Active Toner and apply 6 drops MediBac Clearing® Complex (option of using galvanic on the (+) pole over the complex to restore pH if desincrustation was previously performed.) *(2 minutes)*

9. Treat with Clearing Mattifier, prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer and Solar Defense Booster SPF30. *(1 minute)*
**microZone® eye rescue**

**introduction**
Revive tired eyes suffering with fine lines, sagging and dark circles.

**treatment time**
20 minutes

**suggested menu copy**
Wake up eyes suffering with dark circles, fine lines and sagging with this powerful peptide treatment, designed to gently exfoliate, smooth and hydrate to improve firmness and tone.

**contraindications**
Check your Face Mapping® skin analysis Consultation Card or MicroZone® Consultation Card for any skin or medical conditions that may contraindicate a product selection.

**key products to prescribe**
Soothing Eye Make-Up Remover
MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque
Antioxidant HydraMist
MAP-15 Regenerator®
MultiVitamin Power Firm
Age Reversal Eye Complex

---

**step-by-step**

1. Review the MicroZone® Treatment Consultation Card that your client has completed and ask any additional pertinent questions. *(1 minute)*

2. Cleanse the eyes thoroughly using a pea-size amount of Soothing Eye Make-Up Remover on damp cotton, or for stubborn make-up use PreCleanse. Rinse with warm esthetic wipes or damp cotton. *(2 minutes)*

3. Perform zone-specific Face Mapping® skin analysis, looking for milia, fine lines, dehydration, puffiness and pigmentation. *(1 minute)*

4. Exfoliate using ½ teaspoon Daily Microfoliant® mixed with water in a jelly cup and applied with a Fan Masque Brush (small round electric brushes may be used with Daily Microfoliant® if available). Rinse with warm esthetic wipes or damp cotton. *(3 minutes)*

5. Apply 6 drops AGE Smart® Complex and perform an eye drainage massage:

   a. Pulse with the middle finger to temple (Tai Yang) 3x.

   b. Using the fleshy part of the thumb, stroke over the brows and follow with cushioned forefinger stroking under the eyes draining to the temporal lymph node.

   c. Stroke under the eyes with middle finger and pinch the eyebrows between thumb and forefinger to the end of the eyebrows 3x.

   d. Pulse with the middle finger at the inner eye socket (B1) 3x.

   e. Move up to the inner brow bone and pulse (B2) 3x.

   f. Pulse at the end of the brow near the temples (TH23) 3x.

   g. Using the sides of the thumbs, press by rolling on the zygomatic bone at the mid point of each eye (S2) 3x.

   h. Repeat steps 4, 5, and 6.

   i. Finish with butterfly over the eyes, hold and feather off over eyelids. *(6 minutes)*

6. Apply MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque mixed with 3 to 6 drops AGE Smart® Complex and apply eye gauze dampened with Antioxidant HydraMist. Mix and apply Contour Masque. (Option of performing galvanic iontophoresis or feathering with microcurrent over masque and complex). *(5 minutes)*

7. Rinse with warm esthetic wipes and spritz Antioxidant HydraMist onto fingertips and pat onto the orbital eye area. *(1 minute)*

8. Apply MultiVitamin Power Firm or prescribed Dermalogica Eye Treatment. *(1 minute)*
**introduction**
Deep clean and purify to clear current breakouts while preventing future breakouts.

**treatment time**
20 minutes

**suggested menu copy**
Speed the clearing of breakouts and oily shine with this powerful treatment, designed to control breakout-causing bacteria while soothing inflammation for results that last.

**contraindications**
Check your Face Mapping® skin analysis Consultation Card or MicroZone® Consultation Card for any skin or medical conditions that may contraindicate a product selection.

Not recommended for users of any topical or orally prescribed acne, Vitamin A derived, skin exfoliation medications. If client is using these products, he/she must discontinue at least 2 weeks before undergoing this treatment. Do not use on skin that is sunburned, irritated, sensitive or has recently been professionally exfoliated, resurfaced or waxed.

Clients taking Isotretinoin (sometimes marketed as Accutane) or have taken Isotretinoin in the past 6 months should not receive any exfoliation treatments.

**key products to prescribe**
Clearing Skin Wash
Sebum Clearing Masque
Overnight Clearing Gel
Special Clearing Booster
Concealing Spot Treatment
Oil Control Lotion

---

**microZone® rapid spot clearing**

**step-by-step**

1. Review the MicroZone® Treatment Consultation Card that your client has completed and ask any additional pertinent questions. *(1 minute)*

2. Spot cleanse the skin if you are working on a particular area or perform a full cleanse using PreCleanse or Clearing Skin Wash (vacuum suction can be used but not over inflamed lesions). *(1 to 2 minutes)*

3. Wipe with 1 pump Daily Resurfacer and perform zone-specific Face Mapping® skin analysis. Look for congestion, inflamed breakouts and pustules. *(1 minute)*

4. Exfoliate with Skin Exfoliation System or Daily Microfoliant®, mixing accordingly for area of treatment. *(5 minutes)*

5. Rinse with warm esthetic wipes. Dispense 2 pumps of Post Extraction Solution onto cotton and wipe over selected zones. *(2 minutes)*

6. Mix and apply MediBac Clearing® Masque System or Sebum Clearing Masque. Remove with a warm esthetic wipes customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer. *(5 minutes)*

7. Apply 3 to 6 drops MediBac Clearing® Complex and/or Special Clearing Booster (option of using dry gauze and direct High Frequency over inflamed pustules). *(2 minutes)*

8. Spritz with Multi-Active Toner or wipe with Skin Purifying Wipes. *(1 minute)*

9. Apply Clearing Mattifier, the prescribed Dermalogica Moisturizer and Daylight Defense. Finish by applying Concealing Spot Treatment to inflamed lesions. *(2 minutes)*
**introduction**
Smooth, hydrate and control signs of aging for a healthy smile.

**treatment time**
20 minutes

**suggested menu copy**
This smoothing, conditioning treatment plumps and infuses lips with peptides and antioxidants, helping to restore delicate tissue, minimize fine contour lines and condition for a healthy smile.

**contraindications**
Check your Face Mapping® skin analysis Consultation Card or MicroZone® Consultation Card for any skin or medical conditions that may contraindicate a product selection.

**key products to prescribe**
Soothing Eye Make-Up Remover
Daily Microfoliant®
MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque
MAP-15 Regenerator®
Renewal Lip Complex

---

**microZone® lip renewal**

**step-by-step**

1. Review the MicroZone® Treatment Consultation Card that your client has completed and ask any additional pertinent questions. (1 minute)

2. Spot cleanse the lips using Soothing Eye Make-Up Remover or PreCleanse. (1 minute)

3. Perform zone-specific Face Mapping® skin analysis, looking for comedones, micro-comedones and lines around the lip area. (1 minute)

4. Exfoliate using Daily Microfoliant® with fingers or electric brushes. (Small round electric brushes may be used with Daily Microfoliant® if available). (3 minutes)

5. Rinse with warm esthetic wipes or damp cotton. (1 minute)

6. Apply 3 to 6 drops of AGE Smart® Complex and perform lip energizing movements. (4 minutes)

   a. Using both index fingers from the center of the upper lip, apply 10 pressure points, following around the outside of the mouth, pause at the center of the lower lip. Repeat back around to the upper lip, following with an outward drain above and below the lips with index and middle finger 2x. Repeat the full routine three times.

   b. With thumbs, apply a swift lifting movement to the sides of the mouth with both thumbs, 6x. Follow with an outward drain above and below the lips with index and middle finger, 2x. Repeat the full routine three times.

   c. With fingers below the jaw and thumbs above in line with the jaw, apply gentle pumps starting at the chin along the jaw line towards the ear. Slide back with fingers, 3x. Drain the jaw by linking the fingers at the chin and feather back toward the ear, 3x. Repeat the full routine three times.

7. Combine 3 to 6 drops of AGE smart® Complex with MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque in a jelly cup and apply with a Fan Masque Brush. Dampen a face gauze with Antioxidant HydraMist and place over the mouth and lip area. Mix up Contour Masque as directed and apply over gauze. (Option of using paraffin over lips and galvanic or microcurrent with masque.) (6 minutes)

8. Rinse with warm esthetic wipes or damp cotton, and spritz with Antioxidant HydraMist. (1 minute)

9. Apply MAP-15 Regenerator® and Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30 around the mouth. Finish with an application of Renewal Lip Complex to lips. (2 minutes)
Introduction
The ultimate treatment for dry, chapped, hands showing the signs of premature aging.

Treatment Time
20 minutes

Suggested Menu Copy
Don’t let your hands give away your age! Help hard-working hands recover from dryness, lines, signs of aging and damage with this intensely nourishing treatment. Maximum strength exfoliation lifts dulling debris, readying delicate hand skin to fully benefit from the deep moisturizing benefits of a paraffin bath. Hands are left soft and shielded against future damage.

Contraindications
Check your Face Mapping® skin analysis Consultation Card or MicroZone® Consultation Card for any skin or medical conditions that may contraindicate a product selection.

Key Products to Prescribe
Exfoliating Body Scrub
Conditioning Body Wash
The Ultimate Buffing Cloth
MultiVitamin Power Concentrate
MultiVitamin Hand and Nail Treatment
MultiVitamin BodyBlock SPF20

MicroZone® Hand Repair

Step-by-Step
1. Review the Body Mapping® Consultation Card that your client has completed and ask any additional pertinent questions. (1 minute)

2. Cleanse with Skin Resurfacing Cleanser and remove with a warm steam towel. (2 minutes)

3. Perform zone-specific Body Mapping®, looking for dry cuticles and irritation, cuts, abrasions or sun damage on the hands. (1 minute)

4. Exfoliate with MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant (option of steam if available). (7 minutes)

5. Remove with dry gauze and cleanse with Conditioning Body Wash and The Ultimate Buffing Cloth. Remove with a warm steam towel customized with prescribed Botanical Mixer. (2 minutes)

6. Dip the hands into a warm paraffin bath, place them in plastic liners and finish with towelling mitts. (5 minutes)

7. Option: apply MultiVitamin Hand and Nail Treatment or UltraRich Body Cream to the hands prior to dipping in paraffin bath.

8. Remove mitts, liners and paraffin. Apply MultiVitamin Power Concentrate to the hands. Follow with MultiVitamin Hand and Nail Treatment alone or customized with Solar Defense Booster SPF30, or apply MultiVitamin BodyBlock SPF20. (2 minutes)
microZone® men’s skin fitness
(for congested, oily and breakout-prone skin)

step-by-step

1. Review the MicroZone® Consultation Card that your client has completed and ask any additional pertinent questions. (1 minute)

2. Cleanse using Daily Clean Scrub, or Special Cleansing Gel mixed with a pea-sized amount of Skin Prep Scrub. Remove all traces of cleanser with a steam towel customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer. (Option of using electric brushes; use care if the client has a beard or other facial hair). (3 minutes)

3. Wipe the skin with Daily Resurfacer to de-grease and perform Shave Mapping® skin analysis. Look for oily areas, ingrown hairs, congestion, comedones and micro-comedones. (1 minute)

4. Perform Exfoliation/desincrustation with 1 scoop Skin Exfoliant System, Enzymatic Base, Part A and ¾ teaspoon Scaling Fluid customized with 1 to 2 drops of Purifying Botanical Mixer under steam. (Option of using galvanic desincrusation on the (-) pole). Manipulate with electric brushes to loosen, then remove with a steamed towel customized with Purifying Botanical Mixer. (7 minutes)

5. Perform extractions on congested areas, focusing on the nose, inner cheeks, shave line and forehead. Apply 1 to 2 pumps of Post Extraction Solution to dry cotton and wipe over areas where extractions have been performed. (5 minutes)

6. Spritz the face and neck with Multi-Active Toner and apply a generous amount of Post-Shave Balm. (2 minutes)

Option:
Galvanic iontophoresis (+) pole or microcurrent can be performed over Post-Shave Balm.)

7. Moisturize and protect with Daily Defense Block SPF15 and prescribed Dermalogica Eye Treatment. (1 minute)

IMPORTANT: When using any professional exfoliation or electrical modalities, under no circumstances should you leave your client unattended in the treatment room at any time, even if the exfoliant used would be considered mild, or the machine is pre-programed and fully automated.
microZone® men’s skin fitness
(for inflamed, sensitized, irritated skin)

step-by-step

1. Review the MicroZone® Consultation Card that your client has completed and ask any additional pertinent questions. (1 minute)

2. Cleanse gently with UltraCalming™ Cleanser. Remove with The Sponge Cloth or a cool steam towel customized with Calming Botanical Mixer. Perform Shave Mapping® skin analysis, looking for barrier function, redness, sensitivity, any inflamed lesions and irritation from shaving. (2 minutes)

3. Mix ½ teaspoon Daily Microfoliant® and warm water into a smooth creamy paste. Add 2 to 3 drops of Calming Botanical Mixer. Manipulate gently over the face, throat and neck area. Remove with The Sponge Cloth or cool steam towel customized with Calming Botanical Mixer. (4 minutes)

4. Option #1: Calm and treat breakouts: mix 6 drops of Special Clearing Booster with Colloidal Masque Base. Apply to problem zones. (Gauze and High Frequency can be used as an option.)
   Option #2: For sensitized irritated skin: apply 6 drops of UltraCalming™ Complex, then mix 1 scoop of Clinical Colloidal Oatmeal with water and apply with a Fan Masque Brush. (Cool peltier can be used as an option.) (7 minutes)

5. Remove with a cool steam towel customized with Calming Botanical Mixer. (2 minutes)

6. Spritz with UltraCalming™ Mist and apply Post-Shave Balm, or UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate if skin is sensitized. (2 minutes)

7. Concealing Spot Treatment or Special Clearing Booster can be applied to any breakouts. Apply Daily Defense Block SPF15 or Super Sensitive FaceBlock SPF30 if skin is sensitized. (2 minutes)
**microZone® moisture boost**

**step-by-step**

1. Review the MicroZone® Treatment Consultation Card that your client has completed and ask any additional pertinent questions. *(1 minute)*

2. Cleanse with PreCleanse. Remove all traces of cleanser with a steam towel or warm esthetic wipes. *(2 minutes)*

3. Wipe the skin with 2 pumps of Daily Resurfacer to degrease and perform Face Mapping® skin analysis. Look for areas of concern like dry, flaky patches, fine lines and dehydrated skin. *(1 minute)*

4. Exfoliate by mixing ¼ teaspoon of Daily Microfoliant® with 1 pump of Exfoliant Accelerator 35. *(3 minutes)*

5. Remove with warm esthetic wipes or a hot steam towel customized with Replenishing Botanical Mixer. *(1 minute)*

6. Apply 6 drops of Skin Hydrating Booster followed by Colloidal Masque Base customized with Replenishing Botanical Mixer. Perform galvanic iontophoresis or feathering with microcurrent over masque. *(6 minutes; 4 minutes for electric modality)*

7. Remove with warm esthetic wipes or a hot steam towel customized with Replenishing Botanical Mixer. *(1 minute)*

8. Use Dr. Lucas Pulverizer, Vacuum Spray or Eco Spray customized with 6 drops of Replenishing Botanical Mixer. *(2 minutes)*

9. Apply 6 drops of Skin Hydrating Booster. Spritz the face and neck with Multi-Active Toner. *(1 minute)*

10. Apply Skin Smoothing Cream and appropriate Daylight Defense. *(1 minute)*

---

**introduction**

Rehydrate dry, tight skin! Exfoliate to lift dulling cells and enhance the penetration of nourishing, replenishing ingredients.

**treatment time**

20 minutes

**suggested menu copy**

Rehydrate dry, tight skin! Powerful exfoliation provides a dual benefit, working to stimulate collagen production to help improve elasticity while lifting dulling skin debris to enhance the penetration of nourishing, hydrating ingredients.

**contraindications**

Check your Face Mapping® skin analysis Consultation Card or MicroZone® Consultation Card for any skin or medical conditions that may contraindicate a product selection.

**key products to prescribe**

Daily Microfoliant®

Daily Resurfacer

Skin Hydrating Booster

Multi-Active Toner

Skin Smoothing Cream
introduction
Take the itching, stinging and redness out of sensitive, irritated skin with this UltraCalming™ treatment.

treatment time
20 minutes

suggested menu copy
Take the itching, stinging and redness out of sensitive, irritated skin with this UltraCalming™ treatment. Gentle cleansing and exfoliation is followed by a soothing masque to help relieve inflammation and restore the skin’s protective barrier.

contraindications
Check your Face Mapping® skin analysis Consultation Card or MicroZone® Consultation Card for any skin or medical conditions that may contraindicate a product selection.

key products to prescribe
UltraCalming™ Cleanser
The Sponge Cloth
UltraCalming™ Mist
UltraCalming Serum Concentrate
UltraSmoothing Eye Serum
Barrier Repair

microZone® skin soothing

step-by-step

1. Review the MicroZone® Treatment Consultation Card that your client has completed and ask any additional pertinent questions. (1 minute)

2. Cleanse once with UltraCalming™ Cleanser. (1 minute)

3. Remove all traces of cleanser with a cool towel or wipes or The Sponge Cloth and perform Face Mapping® skin analysis. Look for areas of concern like barrier function, sensitized skin, capillary activity, feel for hot spots and uneven texture. (1 minute)

4. If the skin’s barrier is intact, mix 1 teaspoon of Daily Microfoliant® in a jelly cup with warm water and 3 drops of Calming Botanical Mixer. Apply with a brush under steam, massage gently with hands in circular movements. Remove with a cool towel, esthetic wipes or The Sponge Cloth. (2 minutes)

5. Apply 4 drops of Soothing Additive and perform face only movements of UltraCalming™ Skin Relief Massage (see step-by-step on page 214 for movements). (5 minutes)

6. Press 6 drops of UltraCalming™ Complex onto the face and neck. Mix 1 scoop of Clinical Colloidal Oatmeal with small amount of tepid water and 1 teaspoon of Colloidal Masque Base. (Option: perform galvanic Iontophoresis or feathering with microcurrent over the masque). (6 minutes)

7. To loosen the masque and to avoid any friction, spray with Dr. Lucas Pulverizer, Vacuum Spray or Eco Spray customized with 6 drops Calming Botanical Mixer. Remove residue with a cool towel. (2 minutes)

8. Spritz the face and neck with UltraCalming™ Mist. Follow with a generous amount of UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate. For skin requiring more hydration, follow with Barrier Repair and finish with Super Sensitive FaceBlock SPF30. (2 minutes)
microZone® age management

step-by-step

1. Review the MicroZone® Treatment Consultation Card that your client has completed and ask any additional pertinent questions. (1 minute)

2. Cleanse with Skin Resurfacing Cleanser and remove with a warm steam towel or esthetic wipes. (If the client is sensitive to Skin Resurfacing Cleanser, use Essential Cleansing Solution as an alternative. (2 minutes)

3. Wipe the skin with 2 pumps of Daily Resurfacer to degrease and perform zone-specific Face Mapping® skin analysis. Look for areas of concern like wrinkles, dehydration, sun damage and hyperpigmentation. (1 minute)

4. Exfoliate with 1 bulb of MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant and massage with Indirect High Frequency. (4 minutes)

5. Remove excess with dry gauze and perform the Dermalogica Double Cleanse that begins with PreCleanse, followed by Special Cleansing Gel. Remove with a warm steam towel customized with Replenishing Botanical Mixer. (2 minutes)

6. Apply 6 drops of AGE Smart® Complex to the face. (1 minute)

7. Apply MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque to the face. Follow with 3-4 minutes galvanic Iontophoresis. (5 minutes)

8. Remove masque with warm esthetic wipes. (1 minute)

9. Spritz skin with Antioxidant HydraMist. (1 minute)

10. Apply Extra Firming Booster. Complete the treatment with an application of Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30. (2 minutes)
introduction
Take control of shine and clear congestion with this deep-cleansing, purifying treatment for oily skin. Clay-based treatments will help wick away excess oils and refine skin texture, as oil-free hydration smooths and helps maintain an all-day matte finish.

treatment time
20 minutes

suggested menu copy
Take control of shine and clear congestion with this deep-cleansing, purifying treatment for oily skin.

contraindications
Check your Face Mapping® skin analysis Consultation Card or MicroZone® Consultation Card for any skin or medical conditions that may contraindicate a product selection.

key products to prescribe
Dermal Clay Cleanser
Skin Prep Scrub
Skin Purifying Wipes
Clearing Mattifier
Oil Free Matte Block SPF30

microZone® oil control

step-by-step

1. Review the MicroZone® Treatment Consultation Card that your client has completed and ask any additional pertinent questions. (1 minute)

2. Cleanse with PreCleanse. Use ultrasonic blade for added cleansing (if available). Remove with a warm steam towel or esthetic wipes. (2-4 minutes)

3. Wipe the skin with 2 pumps of Daily Resurfacer to degrease and perform zone-specific Face Mapping® skin analysis. Look for areas of concern like congestion, comedones and oiliness. (1 minute)

4. Cleanse with Dermal Clay Cleanser. Optional; Use electric brushes if you do not have an Ultrasonic blade and did not use during the cleansing step. (2-4 minutes)

5. Remove with esthetic wipes. (1 minute)

6. Combine Skin Prep Scrub with Plankton Masque Base and apply to skin. (4 minutes)

7. Spritz with Multi-Active Toner to rehydrate the masque. (1 minute)

8. Manipulate product over the skin for 2 minutes, concentrating on congested areas. (2 minutes)

9. Remove with esthetic wipes. (1 minute)

10. Apply Clearing Mattifier to areas of oiliness. Finish with an application of Oil Free Matte Block SPF20. (2 minutes)

11. Follow with Barrier Repair and finish with Super Sensitive FaceBlock SPF30. (2 minutes)
Phenomenal products start with great ingredients! The following is a complete list of ingredients commonly used in the Dermalogica line. Because the earth’s ecology is important to us, we select our ingredients, whenever possible, from renewable resources. Our packaging is also either fully recyclable or biodegradable. Dermalogica’s strict manufacturing process ensures that only the most potent and pure ingredients ever get used in our formulas, ensuring that only the best ever reaches your clients’ skin. We never use sensitizing Lanolin, comedogenic mineral oil, drying S.D. alcohol or artificial colors and fragrances in our products. Dermalogica products are never tested on animals.
Acetyl Tetrapeptide-15
A tetrapeptide that targets neurosensitive skin by decreasing the release of pro-inflammatory mediators and increasing the skin’s sensitivity tolerance threshold, making skin less reactive and diminishing sensations of pain and discomfort.

Aesculus Hippocastanum (Horse Chestnut) Seed Extract
Assists in controlling sebaceous gland secretions.

Alaria Esculenta
A seaweed from the British Isles rich in essential fatty acids assists in reinforcing the skin’s barrier lipid layer. Powerful antioxidants nourish skin while stimulating collagen production and Hyaluronic Acid formation.

Aleurites Moluccana Seed Oil
An excellent source of gamma linoleic acid, Kukui Nut Oil smooths skin while moisturizing. Used to treat dry, chapped, irritated skin.

Algae Extract
A rich source of sugars and amino acids derived from marine algae.

Algin
Stabilizer derived from Algae, used as a thickener.

Allantoin
Derived from the Comfrey Root, this botanical extract is an excellent soothing and healing agent.

Allium Sativum (Garlic) Bulb Extract
Alllicin, a major ingredient of fresh garlic extract exerts various beneficial effects including broad spectrum antimicrobial activity and acts as an anti-inflammatory.

Allyl Methacrylates Crosspolymer
A carrier vehicle for essential oils.

Alnus Firmifolia Fruit Extract
Derived from the seed of the Japanese Alder Tree, this extract scavenges free radicals, controls enzyme degradation of key tissue components of the skin and stimulates DNA repair enzymes.

Aloe Barbadensis Leaf Juice
Softening, soothing and healing agent.

Alpha-Glucan Oligosaccharide
A sugar molecule that is bio-selective, meaning it stabilizes the microflora of the skin by encouraging growth of specific non-odor causing bacteria.

Aminomethyl Propanol
pH adjuster.

Aminoguanidine HCl
Prevents Protein-sugar cross linking (glycation). Protects skin proteins collagen and elastin.

Aminopeptidase
Enzyme that helps loosen cell cohesion while stimulating digestion of keratin protein in the epidermis.

Argania Spinosa Kernel Oil
Indigenous to South Morocco Argan Oil is rich in fatty acids and natural tocopherols which preserve cell integrity. Nourishing to the skin and effective in restoring the skin barrier.

Arginine
An essential amino acid used as a conditioning agent.

Arginine/Lysine Polypeptide
A peptide that acts as a sugar trap, binding free sugar that would react with proteins to form Advanced Glycation End-products (AGEs). Provides an anti-glycation effect.

Arnica Montana Flower Extract
A soothing botanical, excellent for calming skin.
Artemisia Vulgaris Extract
Derived from the Mugwort plant, this extract is rich in amino acids, proteins and cell membrane carbohydrates. A powerful anti-irritant and anti-inflammatory agent that reduces redness and irritation.

Ascorbic Acid
Vitamin C, antioxidant, essential for collagen synthesis, water-soluble.

Ascorbyl Glucoside
Helps brighten surface spots, helps control oxidation.

Ascorbyl Palmitate
Oil-soluble, super-stable form of Vitamin C. Antioxidant.

Ascorbyl Tetraisopalmitate
Oil-soluble, super-stable form of Vitamin C. Antioxidant.

Ascophyllum Nodosum Extract
Inhibits Tyrosinase activity and transfer of melanosomes to keratinocytes. Stops the messenger that triggers melanin synthesis.

Aspalanthos Linearis Leaf Extract

Avena Sativa (Oat) Kernel Extract, Protein or Flour
Moisturizes, soothes, calms irritation; anti-inflammatory properties.

Avobenzone
Chemical sunscreen absorbing UVA radiation. Also known as Parsol 1789.

Bacillus Ferment
A source of bacterial protease enzymes that helps loosen cell cohesion while stimulating digestion of keratin protein in the epidermis.

Bambusa Vulgaris Leaf/Stem Extract
Bamboo is the richest source of natural Silica, containing over 70% organic Silica. Silica is lost in the skin as we age. Silica stimulates chondroblasts providing strength and resilience to collagen and elastin.

Bentonite
Called the Clay of a thousand uses. It thickens lotions, stabilizes formulas and purifies skin.

Benzophenone-4
A soluble sunscreen, absorbs UVA; antioxidant.

Berberis Vulgaris Extract
A floral extract that contains essential oil and Malic Acid. Used as an antiseptic.

Beta-Carotene
Pigment that gives Carrots their orange color. A precursor to Vitamin A, it helps maintain healthy skin and hair.

Betula Alba Bark Extract
Stimulates increased blood flow hence speeding healing.

Biosaccharide Gum-4
Obtained by a biotechnological fermentation process using plant sorbitol (of corn origin) and autolytic yeast extract (Saccharomyces cerevisiae). Creates a unique gel matrix that forms a protective barrier against UV rays and environmental pollutants.

Biotin
Assists in regulating sebaceous gland secretions by inhibiting 5-alpha reductase enzyme activity while scavenging free radicals.

Bisabolol
A resin obtained from Chamomile. Reduces sensitivity, redness and inflammation.

Bis-Diglyceryl Polyacyladipate-2
An emollient and lubricant to skin.

Boerhavia Diffusa Root Extract
Targets neurogenic inflammation and restores tissue integrity by limiting the activity of pro-inflammatory agents, as well as promoting the production of natural anti-inflammatory agents in the skin. Soothing properties restore skin to a normal sensitivity level, providing immediate and long-lasting effects.

Borago Officinalis Seed Oil
A rich source of the fatty acid, gamma linoleic acid, required for maintaining proper lipid barrier properties.

Boron Nitride
Provides lubricity and a silky feel to skin.

Brassica Campestris/Aleurites Fordi Oil Copolymer
A conditioning agent derived from a vegetable oil.

Bromelain
An enzyme derived from Pineapple. Helps digest keratin protein and promote exfoliation.

Butylene Glycol
A humectant that attracts and holds water.
ingredient analysis a-z

**Butyrospermum Parkii (Shea Butter)**
Extracted from the fruit of the Shea Tree, found only in Africa, where it has been used for centuries. Shea Butter penetrates into the skin and moisturizes.

**C**

**C12-15 Alkyl Benzoate**
An emollient. Gives skin a smooth, silky feel.

**Caffeine**
Assists in regulating sebaceous gland secretions by inhibiting 5-alpha reductase enzyme activity while scavenging free radicals. Helps constrict and reduce redness.

**Calendula Officinalis Flower Extract**
Derived from the flowers of golden Marigolds. Used to soothe inflammation of the skin.

**Camellia Oleifera Leaf Extract**
Extract from Green Tea. A powerful antioxidant with anti-inflammatory properties.

**Camellia Sinensis Leaf Extract**
Extract from Green Tea. A powerful antioxidant with anti-inflammatory properties.

**Camphor**
A cooling and antiseptic extract with firming and toning properties to the skin. Extracted from the bark of 50-year-old trees in China, Borneo and Japan.

**Cananga Odorata Flower Oil**
A natural extract obtained by distillation from the flowers of the tropical Asiatic evergreen shrub. Used to soothe skin.

**Caprylic / Capric Triglyceride**
An emollient that promotes penetration of ingredients into skin.

**Caprylyl Glycol**
An alcohol, derived from a plant which is used as an emollient.

**Carbomer**
Used as a thickening, suspending and stabilizing agent.

**Carica Papaya Fruit Extract**
A fruit grown in tropical countries, the enzyme Papain has a keratin protein digesting ability that aids in exfoliation.

**Carthamus Tinctorius (Safflower) Seed Oil**
Oil expressed from the flower resembling a thistle. Used for skin softening.

**Cassia Angustifolia Seed Polysaccharide**
This natural polysaccharide forms a protective film on the skin that strongly binds water and fills up fine lines, smoothing the skin’s surface which increases light reflection contributing to skin radiance.

**Cedarwood Oil**
Aromatic, sedative and astringent properties. Helps to relieve itching, eczema and dermatitis.

**Centaurea Cyanus Flower Extract**
An anti-inflammatory extract obtained from the flowers of the plant. Very soothing and sedating to the skin. Similar in action to the essential oil of Chamomile called Azulene.

**Chitosan Succinamide**
Derived from a mushroom, this polysaccharide calms inflammation and supports the natural regeneration of the skin. Glycosaminoglycan structure similar to the extracellular matrix creates a scaffold for new cells.
Chrysanthemum Parthenium
(Feverfew) Extract
An herb derived from Southeast Asia. A member of the Chamomile family with cooling and analgesic properties.

Cinnamomum Zeylanicum Bark Powder or Extract
Fragrant extract and oil from the dried bark of cultivated trees. Excellent for treating acne.

Citric Acid
A preservative and pH adjuster.

Citrus Aurantium Amara (Bitter Orange) Flower Extract or Oil
A pale yellow volatile oil expressed from the fresh peel of a species of citrus and used as a natural fragrance.

Citrus Aurantium Dulcis (Orange) Fruit or Flower Extract
A fragrant floral extract excellent for use on sensitive, irritated skin.

Citrus Grandis (Grapefruit) Fruit Extract and Peel
A fruit extract rich in flavonoids that inhibit Tyrosinase; a natural source of Vitamin C that inhibits melanogenesis.

Citrus Medica Limonum (Lemon) Peel Extract, Oil or Fruit Extract
A natural source of Vitamin C and antioxidant bioflavonoids. Protects skin against damage from reactive ozone. Used as an anti-inflammatory.

Citrus Nobilis (Mandarin Orange) Peel Oil
Soothing, sedating oil; provides toning action to skin.

Citrus Unshiu Peel Extract
Brighteners that help control melanin biosynthesis to help even out skin tone and control hyperpigmentation.

Cocamidopropyl Betaine
A gentle surfactant that cleanses the skin; leaves it soft and supple.

Cocamidopropyl PG-Dimonium Chloride Phosphate
A very mild anti-microbial.

Coco-Glucoside
A gentle surfactant agent derived from coconut.

Colloidal Oatmeal
A complex fraction containing proteins, lipids, carbohydrates and beta-glucan, derived from grinding Oat Grain. Soothes skin while gently aiding in the microfoliation process.

Corallina Officinalis Extract
A calcified Red Seaweed rich in calcium and micronutrients. Promotes cellular cohesion, promoting an improved tissue architecture and firming effect to skin.

Cordyceps Sinensis Extract
Mushroom extract that reduces short and long term skin redness and inflammation.

Coriandrum Sativum (Coriander) Fruit Oil or Powder
An essential oil with stimulating/warming properties.

Corylus Avellana (Hazel) Seed Oil
Skin conditioning agent extracted from the Hazelnut tree.

Crithmum Maritimum Extract
Also know as sea fennel high radical scavenging activity and antioxidant properties.

Cucumis Sativus (Cucumber) Fruit Extract
A cooling, healing agent that soothes irritated skin.

Cupressus Sempervirens Oil
Essential oil derived from the Cypress Tree that is used for its aromatic properties.

Curcuma Longa (Turmeric) Root Extract
Derived from an East Indian herb. Used for its antiseptic properties and fragrance.

Cyclodextrin
A carrier vehicle for essential oils and other actives.

Cyclomethicone
A Silicone skin adherent. Reinforces the barrier layer of skin.

Cyclopentasiloxane
An emollient Silicone that provides a silky, smooth feel to skin. Reinforces the barrier layer of skin.
Cymbopogon Martini Oil
Essential oil with antiseptic and soothing properties.

Cymbopogon Nardus (Citronella) Oil
Essential oil with antiseptic properties, used for fragrance.

Cymbopogon Schoenanthus Oil
Extract of Lemongrass. Used as astringent, as a component of essential oil blends and used for fragrance.

Cynara Scolymus (Artichoke) Leaf Extract
Excellent anti-microbial agent with antiseptic properties.

Daucus Carota Sativa (Carrot) Seed Oil
Rich in carotenoids, easily assimilated antioxidants. Also a natural source of vitamins A, B, C, D and E which contribute to skin rejuvenation.

Decarboxy Carnosine HCl
Protects skin cells (proteins) from glycation (oxidation).

Diatomaceous Earth
A porous and pure form of Silica formed from fossil remains of Algae. Absorbs up to four times its own weight in water. Absorbent and refining.

Di-C12-15 Alkyl Fumarate
A skin conditioning agent that leaves skin smooth and non-greasy.

Dicaprylyl Maleate
A dry silky emollient used as a skin conditioning agent.

Dimethicone
A protective Silicone that gives slip and velvety feel to product while enhancing barrier function.

Dimethicone/PEG-10/15 Crosspolymer
Silicone with emollient and skin conditioning properties.

Dimethicone/Vinyl Dimethicone Crosspolymer
A Silicone derivative that provides a smooth, velvet feel to skin while enhancing the barrier function.

Dimethiconol
A silicone derivative that helps reinforce the barrier layer of skin to prevent desiccation often associated with sun exposure.

Dioscorea Villosa (Wild Yam) Root Extract
A nutritional extract; used in cosmetics that control skin aging.

Dipotassium Glycyrrhizate
Derived from the Licorice root, this active agent is an anti-inflammatory that inhibits release of histamine while slowing the arachidonic acid cascade associated with inflammation.

Disodium Cocoamphodiproprionate
A derivative of Coconut Oil, expressed from kernels of the Coconut. Lathers readily and is a skin cleanser.

Disodium EDTA
A stabilizer used in cosmetics to prevent ingredients in a given formula from binding with trace elements that can exist in water and other ingredients – the technical term for this function is a chelating agent.

Disodium Lauroamphodiacetate
A surfactant.

Disodium Lauryl Sulfo succinate
A surfactant with foaming and cleansing properties.

Echinacea Purpurea Extract
Has anti-bacterial and anti-inflammatory properties.

Elettaria Cardomomum Seed Oil
Excellent antioxidant and high in anti-inflammatory properties.

Enantia Chlorantha Bark Extract
Assists in regulating sebaceous gland secretions by inhibiting 5-alpha reductase enzyme activity while scavenging free radicals.

Epilobium Angustifolium Extract
Commonly known as Canadian Willowherb. Has anti-irritant properties for skin and reduces redness.

Equisetum Arvense or Hiemale Extract
Rich in minerals the body uses to rebuild injured tissue. Facilitates the absorption of calcium by the body; helps eliminate excess oil from skin; firming and tightening action.

Eucalyptus Globulus Leaf Oil
Liquid from fresh leaves of Eucalyptus Tree. Used as an antiseptic.

Eugenia Caryophyllus (Clove) Flower Extract or Oil
A homeopathic analgesic used to control pain and discomfort; also acts as an antiseptic. Active agent is Eugenol, used in baby teething formulas and in dentistry to provide temporary relief of pain.
Farnesol
Derived from Linden Blossoms and Orange Flower Oil. Inhibits bacteria that generate metabolites responsible for body odor.

Ferula Foetida Root Extract
Also known as giant fennel. Slows enzyme activity inhibiting melanin formation. Helps brighten skin.

Ficus Carica (Fig) Powder
From the fruit seed. Powder smooths skin by removing dead, dulling cells.

Fucus Vesiculosus Extract
Moisturizing; nourishing properties.

Fumaria Officinalis Extract
Leaves yield a juice with medicinal properties. Purifying, skin clearing.

Fumaric Acid
Derived from European plant, Fumitory. Protects tissues from ozone damage. A component of Anti-Ozonate Complex.

Galactoarabian
A complex sugar molecule derived from the Larch Tree that stimulates the skin’s natural exfoliation process while enhancing AHA-induced exfoliation.

Gardenia Tahitensis Flower
From the Tahitian flower Tiare, it is a soothing, nourishing skin protectant. collagen cross-linking. Helps shield skin from UV-induced photodamage.

Geranium Maculatum Oil
The roots of this plant are anti-inflammatory and soothing. Used for skin irritations and dermatitis.

Genistein
An active Soy Isoflavonoid that scavenges free radicals while stimulating collagen and Hyaluronic Acid production. Inhibits metalloproteinase enzymes that break down collagen and helps fight

Ginkgo Biloba Leaf Extract
A rich source of catechins, tannins and other plant actives that provide antioxidant protection and stimulate blood flow and oxygen consumption in tissues.

Glucosamine HCl
A low molecular weight glycosaminoglycan component of the acid-free exfoliator skin modulator system that stimulates cell sloughing and cell renewal.

Glycereth-7 Triacetate
A conditioning emollient.

Glycerin
A humectant that attracts and holds moisture.

Glyceryl Stearate
An emulsifier and skin conditioner.

Glycine Soja (Soybean) Oil Protein or Seed Extract
An amino acid-rich extract that helps smooth, aids in wound healing, stimulates elastin and collagen synthesis and increases oxygen in tissues.

Glycolipids
Plant-derived ceramides that help the skin bind and retain moisture while restoring the barrier function of skin.

Glycyrrhetic Acid
Derived from Licorice root. Soothes skin and is used as an anti-inflammatory. Controls melanin synthesis.

Glycyrrhiza Glabra (Licorice) Extract, Root Extract or Leaf Oil
Extracted from the Licorice plant. Inhibits melanin biosynthesis while scavenging free radicals. Rich in polyphenols that act as antioxidants.

Hamamelis Virginiana (Witch Hazel) Water
A plant extract with astringent properties.

Hedera Helix (Ivy) Extract
Extract of Evergreen plant. A natural cleansing extract, has skin refining actions. Firming and tightening to the tissues.

Helianthus Annuus (Sunflower) Seed Oil or Extract
A bland, pale yellow oil containing Vitamin E. Forms a “skin” after drying.

Hexanoyl Dipeptide-3 Norleucine Acetate
An encapsulated peptide that competes with the two natural proteins that contribute to the desmosome connection between cells, therefore weakening the snap-like connection and facilitating cell sloughing.

Hibiscus Esculentus Fruit Extract
An extract derived from the flowers of the Hibiscus plant. Rich in Pyruvic Acid which stimulates cell turnover.
Hippophae Rhamnoides Oil
A phytoactive anti-irritant that soothes and calms the skin.

Homosalate
Broad spectrum sunscreen.

Honey (Mel)
A humectant from the nectar of flowers.

Humulus Lupulus (Hops) Extract
Derived from the fruit of the Hop plant, aids in wound healing and soothing irritation.

Hydrastis Canadensis (Golden Seal) Extract
Derived from the plant Rhizome; used for its antiseptic and anti-inflammatory properties.

Hydrogenated Castor Oil
Derived from Ricinus Communis (Castor) Seed. Used as a skin conditioning agent.

Hydrogenated Coconut Oil
Derived from Cocos Nucifera (Coconut) Oil. Used as a skin conditioning agent.

Hydrolyzed Algin
Derived from Algae or Seaweed. A humectant and conditioning agent that may be combined with Zinc Sulfate to regulate sebum levels, inhibit acne bacteria and reduce irritation.

Hydrolyzed Glycosaminoglycans
A mixture of plant derived components similar to the natural Glycosaminoglycan molecules found in the skin’s extracellular matrix. Contains primarily Hyaluronic Acid, lipids and sugars.

Hydrolyzed Soy Protein
Skin conditioning agent derived from Soybean. Firms and conditions skin.

Hydrolyzed Wheat Protein
Smaller fragments of Wheat Protein that condition skin.

Hydroxyphenyl Propamidobenzoic Acid
Synthetic avenanthramide (Oat active) used to boost the efficacy of natural Oat.

Hydroxypropyl Cyclodextrin
A carbohydrate compound used as a diluting ingredient for powders; used as a thickener in creams and liquids.

Hypericum Perforatum Extract
St. John’s Wort, anti-inflammatory and astringent properties.

Hyssopus Officinalis Extract
Essential oil used for its fragrance and skin conditioning properties.

Hyssopus Officinalis Extract
Ilex Paraguariensis Powder
Liquid from fresh leaves of Eucalyptus Tree. Used as an antiseptic.

Iron Oxides
Natural earth minerals that provide coloration to formula.

Isodecyl Salicylate
The ester of Decyl Alcohol (a surfactant) and Salicylic Acid, used to stimulate cell renewal.

Isododecane
An emollient that smooths skin.

Isohexadecane
Used as an emulsifier and thickening agent in cosmetics.

Jasminum Officinale (Jasmine) Oil
An extract of the Jasmine flower. Used for fragrance. Provides moisturizing, soothing and healing properties. Excellent for sensitized skin.

Juglans Regia (Walnut) Seed or Shell Powder
From the Noix de Grenoble walnut, a rich source of bioflavonoids that scavenge free radicals, protecting the skin against further environmental aggressions.

Juniperus Virginiana (Juniper) Oil
Antiseptic used as an astringent. Helps clear and tone.

Kaolin
A white powder clay, obtained from Kaoling Hill in Southeast China. Used for its oil-absorbing properties. Helps refine pores and clear congestion.

Lactamide MEA
A gentle skin conditioning agent.

Lactic Acid
Retextures skin’s surface and stimulates cell renewal and cell turnover. An alpha hydroxy acid, that diminishes the cohesion of surface cells and subsequently, prevents the thickening of the Stratum Corneum by inducing exfoliation. Helps control melanin synthesis, hydrates skin and stimulates ceramide production.

Lactose
A milk sugar with exfoliation capabilities.
**Lactobacillus/Pumpkin Fruit Ferment Filtrate**
Helps exfoliate surface cells to smooth, enhance skin tone and eliminate dark spots.

**Lavandula Angustifolia (Lavender) Flower/Leaf/Stem Extract or Oil**
A natural analgesic effective in treating dermatitis and oily skin problems. Antiseptic and anti-inflammatory.

**Lecithin**
A natural antioxidant, emollient and emulsifier. Egg Yolk is 8-9% Lecithin.

**Lens Esculenta (Lentil) Fruit Extract**
The lentil extract contains Vitamin B5 and trisaccharides assisting with tissue repair and replenishing nutrients to the skin.

**Leucine**
An essential amino acid, conditions skin.

**Linoleic Acid**
An essential fatty acid component of Vitamin F. Skin conditioner and smoothing agent that is critical for lipid barrier function of stratum corneum.

**Lupinus Albus (Lupin) Seed Extract**
A member of the legume family. Used as a humectant.

**Lysine**
An essential amino acid, used to improve the condition of the skin.

**Macrocystis Pyrfera (Kelp)**
A Brown Seaweed Extract, rich in polysaccharides and amino acids, that help moisturize and firm skin. Aids in smoothing skin texture.

**Madecassoside**
A patented mixture of two compounds from Centella Asiatica (AKA Gotu Kola) that inhibit inflammatory mediators in the skin while treating inflammation. Helps normalize keratinocytes to control development of flaky skin patches that result from erratic cell proliferation due to irritation while stimulating collagen biosynthesis.

**Magnesium Ascorbyl Phosphate**
An antioxidant and skin conditioning ingredient. A stabilized form of Vitamin C, linked to collagen synthesis.

**Magnesium Sulfate**
Part of the hydrolyzed algin complex that maintains metalloenzymes (collagenase, elastase, etc.) at optimum activity to repair damaged skin tissue.

**Mahonia Aquifolium Root Extract**
Essential oil used for its astringent and antiseptic properties.

**Malva Sylvestris (Mallow) Extract**
A plant gel which is soothing, healing and softening to skin. Excellent in reducing inflammation.

**Manganese Sulfate**
Part of the hydrolyzed Algin complex that maintains metalloenzymes (collagenase, elastase, etc.) at optimum activity to repair damaged skin tissue.

**Mangiferia Indica (Mango) Fruit Extract**
Extract derived from Mango fruit, used for its natural fragrance properties.

**Melaleuca Alternifolia (Tea Tree) Extract or Leaf Oil**
Used for its antiseptic, analgesic and anti-bacterial properties, also aids in healing and soothing the skin.

**Melissa Officinalis Leaf Extract or Oil**
From the leaves and flowers of the Balm Mint plant. Imparts an anti-bacterial and anti-inflammatory action that has a calming, soothing effect on the skin.

**Mentha Viridis (Spearmint) Leaf Oil**
A essential volatile oil obtained by steam distillation from the fresh flowering spearmint plant. Used as a natural fragrance for cosmetics.

**Menthol**
Imparts a “cool” feeling to skin. Derived from the Peppermint plant. Has an anti-inflammatory, anti-itching effect on skin.

**Menthoxypropanediol**
Provides a cooling, soothing effect to skin.

**Methyl Gluceth-20**
A humectant.

**Mica (CI 77019)**
Any of a group of minerals that are found in crystallized, thin, elastic sheets that can be spread easily. Ground and widely used as a lubricant, coloring in cosmetics and to create an iridescence.

**Microcrystalline Cellulose**
A plant-derived cellulose powder that binds other ingredients in a formula.
Montmorillonite
A type of clay that is the main ingredient of Bentonite and Fuller’s Earth. Has oil-absorbing properties.

Morus Alba Root Extract
A native plant of Japan. Inhibits Tyrosinase activity, controlling melanin production. Used as an anti-inflammatory agent.

Murraya Koenigii Leaf Oil
Native to India and often referred to as Black Neem. The highly aromatic oil extracted from the Curry Leaf possess antioxidant, anti-microbial and anti-inflammatory properties.

Nasturtium Officinale Extract
An extract from Nasturtium flowers that inhibits Tyrosinase, actively controlling melanin.

Niacinamide
Assists in regulating sebaceous gland secretions by inhibiting 5-alpha reductase enzyme activity while scavenging free radicals.

Nordihydroguaiaretic Acid
Regulates cell proliferation and sebaceous activity by decreasing overall lipid formation in the sebaceous glands. Anti-inflammatory properties.

Octisalate
Broad spectrum sunscreen. Also known as Octyl Salicylate.

Octocrylene
Broad spectrum sunscreen.

Oenothera Biennis (Evening Primrose) Oil
An essential fatty acid oil, rich in Gamma Linoleic and Gamma Linolenic acids. Also known as Vitamin F. Hydrating to skin, it helps restore the moisture and lipid balance.

Olea Europaea (Olive) Fruit/Leaf/Husk Extract or Oil
A water-soluble extract from the Olive fruit, rich in antioxidant polyphenols that help fight free radical damage and control environmental aggressions. A rich source of Lactic Acid that aids in moisturization and helps promote cell renewal in the epidermis.

Oligopeptide-34
A proprietary peptide that reduces (-MSH activity, inhibits Tyrosinase activity and melanosome transfer to cells. Helps prevent cellular discoloration for unsurpassed skin brightening.

Orchis Sativa (Rice) Bran Oil or Wax
The most nutrient-rich portion of Rice. Contains numerous biologically active agents, including Phytic Acid, that aid in gentle microfoliation of skin while controlling melanogenesis.

Orchis Sativa (Rice) Extract
Rich in biological actives and oligosaccharides (sugars) that soothe and moisturize the skin during microfoliation while controlling melanogenesis.

Oxybenzone
A sunscreen agent.

Ozokerite
A naturally occurring wax-like mineral. Colorless and white when pure; upon refining yields a hard, white, microcrystalline wax known as Ceresin. Widely used as an emulsifier and thickening ingredient.

Palmitoyl Oligopeptide
A synthetic peptide complex that acts as a cellular messenger to stimulate collagen and Hyaluronic Acid to increase skin elasticity and tone.
**Palmitoyl Pentapeptide-4**
A synthetic protein fragment that stimulates collagen synthesis in the skin and the formation of skin glycosaminoglycans (i.e., Hyaluronic Acid). Licensed under U.S. Pat. No. 6,492,326.

**Palmitoyl Tetrapeptide-7**
A synthetic peptide complex that acts as a cellular messenger to stimulate collagen and Hyaluronic Acid to increase skin elasticity and tone.

**Palmitoyl Tripeptide-5**
Helps stimulate collagen synthesis, firms skin and overrides the effects of Matrix Metalloproteinase (MMP) enzymes that contribute to skin aging.

**Palmitoyl Tripeptide-38**
Targets not only stimulation of collagen I synthesis but also stimulation of fibronectin synthesis and stimulation of a fundamental component of the dermal/epidermal junction: collagen IV.

**Panthenol**
Pro-Vitamin B₅; a B-complex vitamin present in all living cells. A constituent of co-enzyme A (Krebs cycle enzyme). Promotes tissue healing. Used as a humectant.

**Papain**
Derived from Papaya, this enzyme digests keratin protein, though not as strong as Bromelain from Pineapple.

**Parietaria Officinalis Extract**
An extract obtained from the leaves and stem of Parietaria Officinalis. Used as an emollient, particularly in baby creams and lotions.

**Passiflora Incarnata Extract**
Commonly known as passion flower. Excellent anti-inflammatory, soothing and healing properties.

**PCA**
Also known as 2-Pyrrolidone-5-Carboxylic Acid, PCA is an excellent humectant and is naturally found in the skin.

**PEG-8**
A polymer of ethylene oxide. Usually a waxy compound. Used as a humectant and viscosity adjuster.

**PEG-8 Beeswax**
An emulsifying agent and lubricant.

**PEG-12 Dimethicone**
A skin protectant that leaves a velvety feel to the skin.

**PEG-10 Sunflower Glycerides**
A botanically-derived emollient obtained from high oleic Sunflower Seed Oil to leave skin feeling smooth and soft.

**PEG-100 Stearate**
An emulsifying agent.

**PEG-40 Hydrogenated Castor Oil**
A solubilizer for essential oils.

**PEG-40 Sorbitan Peroleate**
A humectant from ripe berries of Mountain Ash.

**Pelargonium Graveolens Flower Oil**
Derived from Rose Geranium leaves. Used as an antiseptic, astringent and anti-inflammatory.

**Pentylene Glycol**
A humectant that maintains moisture balance in skin.

**Persea Gratissima (Avocado) Oil**

**Peumus Boldus Leaf Extract**
A natural alkaloid from Chilean Boldo Tree that acts as an anti-inflammatory and powerful antioxidant that protects the cells.

**Phenoxyethanol**
An anti-microbial preservative.

**Phoenix Dactylifera (Date) Seed**
From the fruit seed. Powder smooths skin by removing dead, dulling cells.

**Phospholipids**
An emollient. Part of liposome structure.

**Pinus Sylvestris Cone Extract or Leaf Oil**
Colorless or faint yellow liquid from the twigs and needles of the Pine Tree that imparts a fragrance.

**Pisum Sativum (Pea) Extract**
Contains vital amino acids and proteins necessary for the production of collagen and elastin. Also reinforces the skin’s natural defense in fighting free radicals.

**Pogostemon Cablin Oil**
Extract from the plant Pogostemon Patchouli. Used for its antiseptic properties.
**Polyacrylamide**
The polymer of acrylamide monomers. It is white, solid, water-soluble and used as a thickening ingredient, suspending and an additive to adhesives.

**Polyglyceryl-4 Isostearate**
An emulsifier that allows oil-soluble ingredients to blend with water-soluble ingredients.

**Polygonum Cuspidatum Root Extract**
Also known as Mexican Bamboo or Japanese knotweed. Increases cellular metabolism by activating SIRT 1 protein thereby boosting critical skin proteins and reversing signs of skin aging. Provides protection against multiple free radical activity and free radical scavengers.

**Polysorbate 20**
A widely used emulsifier and stabilizer.

**Polysorbate 60**
An emulsifier that is waxy and soluble in solvents.

**Potentaila Oleracea (Purslane) Extract**
An enriched extract of vitamins, fatty acids, flavonoids and anti-inflammatory agents that help control and reduce redness.

**Portulaca Pilosa Extract**
From the edible plant found mainly in South America. Extract contributes to restoring volume and firmness to the skin.

**Potassium Sorbate**
Sorbic Acid Potassium Salt. Used as a mold and yeast inhibitor.

**Potato Starch Modified**
A flour prepared from potatoes, ground to a pulp and washed of fibers. When modified, it has been altered chemically to modify such properties as thickening or gelling.

**PPG-2 Isoceteth-20 Acetate**
An ester solvent for gums, resins and volatile oils.

**PPG-5 Ceteth-20**
A waxy substance used as an emollient and emulsion stabilizer; a solubilizing agent.

**Propylene Glycol**
Clear, colorless liquids which are among the most common moisture-carrying vehicles in skin care. Superb permeation and excellent humectant properties. Softens and moisturizes the skin.

**Prunus Armeniaca (Apricot) Kernel Oil**
A Vitamin E rich emollient oil with excellent skin softening properties.

**Pyreus Malus (Apple) Fruit Extract**
An antioxidant. A natural source of Malic Acid, a hydroxy acid that aids in exfoliation.

**Quillaja Saponaria Bark Extract**
The inner dried bark of a tree grown in South America. In cosmetics, it is used as a cleansing agent.

**Ranunculus Ficaria Extract**
Soothes and calms irritated skin while reducing redness. Contains phenolic derivatives such as rutin and tri-terpenic saponins that help decongest skin tissue and reduce blotchiness.

**Retinol**
Vitamin A. A yellow, viscous liquid insoluble in water. Used in lubricating cream and oils for its skin-regenerating properties. Reverses the signs of photoaging in skin.

**Retinyl Palmitate**
A derivative of Vitamin A, helps stimulate collagen and reverse the signs of prematurely-induced photoaging. Helps to increase skin elasticity while enhancing water barrier properties.

**Ricinotheth-40**
Known as Castor Oil. The seed of the Castor Oil plant, extracted from the bean. Soothing and emollient to skin.

**Ricinus Communis (Castor) Seed Oil**
Used for its soothing properties to the skin.

**Rosa Canina Fruit Extract**
Extract of the fruit of Rosa Canina, a wild Rose. Used as a skin conditioner.

**Rosa Centifolia Flower Extract**
An essential oil from the Cabbage Rose; used for its aromatic properties.

**Rosa Moschata Seed Oil**
Commonly known as Rose Hips, are very high in Vitamin C acting as a free radical scavenger and antioxidant. Other attributes include skin moisturization, cell regeneration and as an anti-inflammatory.

**Rose Flower Oil**
Extract of the fruit of various species of wild Roses, rich in natural Vitamin C. Moisturizing and hydrating to skin. Helps protect the skin from capillary damage; firms and tones the tissues.
Rosmarinus Officinalis (Rosemary) Leaf Extract or Oil
Extracted from the plant Rosmarinus Officinalis. Used for its purifying, cleansing and antiseptic properties.

Rubus Idaeus (Raspberry) Fruit Extract
A soothing and non-stimulating extract. Red Raspberry Extract is also very soothing and relaxing to inflamed skin. Excellent for sensitive skin and any irritation from acne, shaving or windburn.

Ruscus Aculeatus Root Extract
An extract obtained from the root of a shrub, native to Europe. Helps maintain the skin’s elasticity and texture. Helps to diminish the appearance of wrinkles and skin damage.

Saccharomyces/Xylinum/Black Tea Ferment
Commonly known as Kombucha. Boosts skin immune function and assists in restoring volume to deficient zones in the skin.

Saccharum Officinarum (Sugar Cane) Extract
Used in moisturizers as a skin conditioner.

Salicylic Acid
A keratolytic agent, often referred to as a beta hydroxy acid. Helps dissolve the glue-like matrix holding the Stratum Corneum cells together. An anti-inflammatory agent.

Salix Alba (Willow) Bark Extract
A natural source of Salicylic Acid, a beta hydroxy acid that exfoliates superficial skin cells leaving a smoother texture and surface.

Salvia Officinalis (Sage) Oil or Leaf Extract
An astringent, antiseptic oil used for its soothing and calming effects on skin.

Salvia Sclarea (Clary) Oil
An essential oil used for its aromatic properties.

Sambucus Nigra Flower Extract
Extracted from the honey-scented Elder Tree. Used for its mildly tonic properties.

Santalum Album (Sandalwood) Extract or Oil
Antiseptic oil. Used to treat infections. Soothing and healing properties.

Saponaria Officinalis Extract
Also known as Soapwort. This extract is obtained from the European and Middle Eastern variety that has a coarse pink flower and foams like a lather. It is used as a foaming, natural cleanser for the skin.

Sarcosine
Regulates sebum production and inhibits lipase activity in bacteria.

Sclerotium Gum
A thickener.

Serine
An amino acid that helps balance moisture in skin.

Silanediol Salicylate

Silica
A natural mineral from non-exploited sources whose crystalline form is used as an exfoliating scrub.

Silybum Marianum Fruit Extract or Powder
Commonly known as Milk Thistle, high in antioxidant properties that scavenge free radicals. Also has anti-inflammatory effects.

Simmondsia Chinensis (Jojoba) Seed Oil
A moisturizer and emollient with excellent spreadability and lubricity properties. Rapid penetration reduces water loss.

Sodium Ascorbyl Phosphate
A Vitamin C derivative that inhibits melanin formation and stimulates collagen formation.

Sodium Benzoate
Anti-microbial preservative.

Sodium Chloride
Salt. Used as an astringent, antiseptic or a thickening agent.

Sodium Citrate
White, odorless granules or powder. Used as a preservative.

Sodium Cocoyl Isethionate
A mild cleansing agent that leaves skin with a soft after-feel.

Sodium Hexametaphosphate
Also known as Graham’s Salt. Helps to keep Calcium, Magnesium, and Iron salts in solution.
ingredient analysis a-z

**Sodium Hyaluronate**
The sodium salt of Hyaluronic Acid. Used as a powerful humectant. GAG (or Glycosaminoglycan) helps retain moisture levels in the tissue.

**Sodium Lactate**
A source of Lactic Acid, a sodium salt. See lactic acid.

**Sodium Lauroyl Glutamate**
A mild cleansing agent that leaves skin with a soft after-feel.

**Sodium Lauroyl Lactylate**
A surfactant used for its foaming qualities.

**Sodium PCA**
Natural mineral salt used as a humectant. A component of the Natural Moisturizing Factor (NMF) in skin.

**Sodium Salicylate**
An anti-microbial. Source for Salicylic Acid.

**Sodium Trideceth Sulfate**
A sodium salt. Used as an emulsifier.

**Solanum Lycopersicum (Tomato) Extract**
Contains Lycopene, a carotenoid with high antioxidant properties that protects skin from free radicals, protecting cells from aging and degenerative damage.

**Sorbitol**
A sugar alcohol found in ripe berries, Seaweed and Algae. A humectant.

**Spiraea Ulmaria Extract**

**Spirulina Maxima Extract**
Has a hydrating effect on skin. Spirulina proteins contribute to stimulation of the fibroblast and to tissue regeneration.

**Squalane**
Obtained from Olive Oil. Used for its rich and emollient skin moisturizing qualities.

**Stearic Acid**
A white, waxy, natural fatty acid. Used as a main ingredient in bar cleansers and lubricants/moisturizers.

**Sucrose Cocoate**
A mild cleansing agent with conditioning and moisturizing properties. Derived from vegetable oil.

**Sulfur**
Cleans skin by eliminating bacteria associated with acne by clearing excess oil and congestion in the follicle.

**Superoxide Dismutase**
A powerful scavenger enzyme for oxygen-free radicals.

**Symphytum Officinale Extract**
Natural plant extract that contains Allantoin. Healing and soothing.

**T**

**Thymus Vulgaris (Thyme) Extract or Oil**
A powerful antiseptic and anti-microbial agent.

**Theobroma Cacao (Cocoa) Seed Butter**
Very high emollient properties with soothing effects.

**Tilia Cordata Flower Extract**
Natural fragrance from the flowers of the Linden Tree, grown in Europe and the United States.

**Titanium Dioxide**
Also known as Microcrystalline. An inorganic natural material, functions as a physical sunscreen, protecting the skin from both UVA and UVB rays.

**Tocopherol or Tocopheryl**
An antioxidant; non-derivatized form of Vitamin E.

**Tocopherol Acetate**
Vitamin E. An antioxidant that scavenges damaging free radicals; improves barrier function of the skin.

**Trametes Versicolor Extract**
Mushroom extract that reduces short and long-term skin inflammation and redness.

**Trifolium Pratense (Clover) Flower Extract**
Anti-inflammatory agent, inhibits an arachidonic acid cascade enzymes associated with skin inflammation.

**Triticum Vulgare (Wheat) Germ Extract or Oil**
An antioxidant high in Vitamin E. Considered valuable in terms of delaying the signs of aging.

**Tyrosine**
An amino acid that helps ingredients penetrate skin.
Valerianna Officinalis Extract
Calming and clearing effect on skin.

Valine
An essential amino acid used as a skin conditioner.

Vitis Vinifera (Grape) Seed or Fruit Extract
A Proanthocyanidin-rich extract from Grape seeds that has anti-enzyme properties; antioxidant.

Wasabia Japonica Root Extract
Known as green Japanese horseradish, this is a warming herb with anti-microbial and anti-inflammatory properties. Also contains high levels of Vitamin C.

Xanthan Gum
Used as a thickener, emulsifier and stabilizer.

Yeast Extract
Derived from unicellular plants, this extract is a component of the acid-free exfoliator modulator system. Stimulates cell renewal and is a rich source of Beta-glucan, an immune system stimulant for skin.

Yucca Schidigera Extract
Derived from the cactus plant known as Yucca. Used to treat burns and mild abrasions. An anti-inflammatory agent that reduces redness and soothes skin.

Zanthoxylum Alatum Extract
A patented extract from the Chinese fruit known as Szechwan Pepper. Provides temporary pain relief and reduces sensation of heat in skin.

Zea Mays (Corn) Cob Meal
A finely milled powder from Corn Cobs. The extremely fine milling of the meal ensures that no harsh abrasiveness is left in the action of this exfoliant. Helps cell removal without drying or scratching.

Zinc Gluconate
Assists in regulating sebaceous gland secretions by inhibiting 5-alpha reductase enzyme activity while scavenging free radicals.

Zingiber Officinale (Ginger) Root Oil or Powder
Essential oil used as a natural fragrance and a skin conditioning agent.

Zinc Oxide
A sun protectant against UVA and UVB rays. Also has anti-irritant and antioxidant properties.

Zinc Sulfate
Complexed with sugar derivatives of Brown Algae to provide anti-inflammatory, anti-microbial and sebum-regulating function.

Zostera Marina Extract
Commonly known as Sea Grass, accelerates collagen synthesis and promotes skin suppleness.

Zingiber Officinale (Ginger) Root Extract
Promotes warmth by increasing circulation, acts as an anti-inflammatory for soothing the skin and scavenges free radicals while reducing edema.
Active Moist, 26
After Sun Repair, 152
Age Reversal Eye Complex, 93
AGE Smart® Complex, 99
Antioxidant HydraMist, 83
Barrier Repair, 119
Body Hydrating Cream, 158
Body Microfoliant®, 163
C-12 Concentrate, 105
Calming Botanical Mixer, 75
ChromaWhite TRx® Complex, 110
Clean Bar, 173
Clean Massage Oil Base, 167
Clearing Additive, 72
Clearing Mattifier, 131
Clearing Skin Wash, 129
Climate Control Lip Treatment, 41
Clinical Colloidal Oatmeal, 124
Close Shave Oil, 178
Colloidal Masque Base, 63
Concealing Spot Treatment, 135
Conditioning Body Wash, 156
Contour Masque, 65
Daily Defense Block SPF15, 180
Daily Microfoliant®, 22
Daily Resurfacer, 23
Daily Clean Scrub, 174
Dermal Clay Cleanser, 13
Dynamic Skin Recovery SPF30, 89
Energizing Oil – Professional Strength, 168
Environmental Control Deodorant, 47
Enzymatic Sea Mud Pack, 166
Essential Cleansing Solution, 15
Exfoliant Accelerator 35, 60
Exfoliating Body Scrub, 155
Exfoliating Face Brush, 24
Extra Firming Booster, 38
Extra Rich FaceBlock SPF30, 145
Extreme C, 106
Gentle Cream Exfoliant, 20
Gentle Soothing Booster, 37
Hydro-Active Mineral Salts, 157
Intensive Eye Repair, 45
Intensive Moisture Balance, 28
Intensive Moisture Masque, 34
Invigorating Shave Gel, 177
MAP-15 Regenerator®, 86
Massage Cream, 70
MediBac Clearing® Masque System, 139
MediBac Clearing® Complex, 141
Multi-Active Toner, 18
MultiVitamin BodyBlock SPF20, 148
MultiVitamin Hand and Nail Treatment, 95
MultiVitamin Thermafoliant®, 84
MultiVitamin Power Concentrate, 87
MultiVitamin Power Exfoliant, 97
MultiVitamin Power Firm, 92
MultiVitamin Power Recovery® Masque, 85
Oil Control Lotion, 132
Oil Free Massage, 140
Oil Free Matte Block SPF20, 143
Overnight Clearing Gel, 133
Overnight Repair Serum, 88
Plankton Masque Base, 64
Post Extraction Solution, 68
Post-Shave Balm, 179
Power Recovery® Pack, 164
Power Rich™, 91
Powerfoliant®, 104
PreCleanse, 12
Pre-Shave Guard, 175
Pure Light SPF30, 107
Pure Night, 108
Purifying Botanical Mixer, 76
Renewal Lip Complex, 94
Replenishing Botanical Mixer, 77
Revitalizing Additive, 71
Scaling Fluid, 67
Sebum Clearing Masque, 136
Sheer Moisture SPF15, 29
Redness Relief SPF20, 120
Sheer Tint Moisture SPF15, 29
Shine Therapy Shampoo, 48
Silk Finish Conditioner, 49
Skin Exfoliant System, 138
Skin Hydrating Booster, 36
Skin Hydrating Masque, 32
Skin Prep Scrub, 21
Skin Purifying Wipes, 130
Skin Refining Masque, 33
Skin Renewal Booster, 39
dermalogica
Skin Resurfacing Cleanser, 82
Skin Smoothing Cream, 27
Solar Defense Booster SPF30, 147
Solar Defense Wipes SPF15, 150
Solar Shield SPF15, 151
Soothing Additive, 73
Soothing Eye Make-Up Remover, 43
Soothing Shave Cream, 176
Special Cleansing Gel, 14
Special Clearing Booster, 134
Stress Relief Oil – Professional Strength, 169
Stress Relief Treatment Oil, 160
Super Rich Repair, 90
Super Sensitive FaceBlock SPF30, 144
The Sponge Cloth, 16
The Ultimate Buffing Cloth, 161
Thermal Heat Activator, 165
Thermal Stamp, 170
Total Eye Care with SPF15, 44
Treatment Foundation, 51
Tri-Active Cleanse, 103
Ultra Sensitive FaceBlock SPF25, 146
UltraCalming™ Cleanser, 115
UltraCalming™ Complex, 123
UltraCalming™ Mist, 116
UltraCalming™ Relief Masque, 121
UltraCalming™ Serum Concentrate, 117
UltraRich Body Cream, 159
UltraSmoothing Eye Serum, 118
WaterBlock Solar Spray SPF30, 149
notes